

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 10-K**

**ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d)  
OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

For the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018  
(Fiscal 2017)

Commission File Number 01-34219

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**

(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

**Delaware**  
(State or other jurisdiction of  
incorporation or organization)  
  
**555 Turnpike Street, Canton, MA**  
(Address of principal executive offices)

**04-2623104**  
(IRS Employer  
Identification No.)

**02021**  
(Zip Code)

**(781) 828-9300**

(Registrant's telephone number, including area code)

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:**

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Stock, \$0.01 par value	The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC

**Securities registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act:**

None

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically and posted on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and posted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes  No

Indicate by check mark if disclosure of delinquent filers pursuant to Item 405 of Regulation S-K (§229.405 of this chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to the best of the registrant's knowledge, in definitive proxy or information statements incorporated by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company, or emerging growth company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "non-accelerated filer," "smaller reporting company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Accelerated filer	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Non-accelerated filer	<input type="checkbox"/>	Smaller reporting company	<input type="checkbox"/>
(Do not check if a smaller reporting company)		Emerging growth company	<input type="checkbox"/>

If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Act). Yes  No

As of July 29, 2017, the aggregate market value of the Common Stock held by non-affiliates of the registrant was approximately \$67.5 million, based on the last reported sale price on that date. Shares of Common Stock held by each executive officer and director and by certain persons who own 10% or more of the outstanding Common Stock have been excluded on the basis that such persons may be deemed to be affiliates. This determination of affiliate status is not necessarily determinative for other purposes.

The registrant had 48,759,404 shares of Common Stock, \$0.01 par value, outstanding as of March 16, 2018.

**DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE**

Portions of the Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders are incorporated by reference into Part III.

DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.

Index to Annual Report on Form 10-K  
Year Ended February 3, 2018

	<u>Page</u>
<b>PART I</b>	
Item 1. <a href="#">Business</a>	3
Item 1A. <a href="#">Risk Factors</a>	12
Item 1B. <a href="#">Unresolved Staff Comments</a>	19
Item 2. <a href="#">Properties</a>	19
Item 3. <a href="#">Legal Proceedings</a>	21
Item 4. <a href="#">Mine Safety Disclosures</a>	21
<b>PART II</b>	
Item 5. <a href="#">Market for Registrant’s Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities</a>	22
Item 6. <a href="#">Selected Financial Data</a>	24
Item 7. <a href="#">Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	26
Item 7A. <a href="#">Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk</a>	38
Item 8. <a href="#">Financial Statements and Supplementary Data</a>	39
Item 9. <a href="#">Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure</a>	68
Item 9A. <a href="#">Controls and Procedures</a>	68
Item 9B. <a href="#">Other Information</a>	70
<b>PART III</b>	
Item 10. <a href="#">Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance</a>	71
Item 11. <a href="#">Executive Compensation</a>	71
Item 12. <a href="#">Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters</a>	71
Item 13. <a href="#">Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence</a>	71
Item 14. <a href="#">Principal Accounting Fees and Services</a>	71
<b>PART IV</b>	
Item 15. <a href="#">Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules</a>	72
Item 16. <a href="#">Form 10-K Summary</a>	72
<a href="#">Signatures</a>	77

## PART I.

Certain statements contained in this Annual Report on Form 10-K (this “Annual Report”) constitute “forward-looking statements,” including forward-looking statements within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. In some cases, forward-looking statements can be identified by the use of forward-looking terminology such as “may,” “will,” “estimate,” “intend,” “plan,” “continue,” “believe,” “expect” or “anticipate” or the negatives thereof, variations thereon or similar terminology. The forward-looking statements contained in this Annual Report are generally located under the headings “Business” and “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations,” but may be found in other locations as well, and include statements regarding cash flows, gross profit margins, store counts, capital expenditures, marketing spend, depreciation, sales and earnings expectations for fiscal 2018, the expected impact of marketing initiatives in fiscal 2018, the timing of identifying and hiring a successor CEO and the expected use of cash from operations in fiscal 2018. These forward-looking statements generally relate to plans and objectives for future operations and are based upon management’s reasonable estimates of future results or trends. The forward-looking statements in this Annual Report should not be regarded as a representation by us or any other person that the objectives or plans of the Company will be achieved. Numerous factors could cause our actual results to differ materially from such forward-looking statements, including, without limitation, risks relating to the execution of our corporate strategy and ability to grow our market share, and those risks and uncertainties set forth below under Item 1A, *Risk Factors*. Readers are encouraged to review these risks and uncertainties carefully.

These forward-looking statements speak only as of the date of the document in which they are made. We disclaim any obligation or undertaking to provide any updates or revisions to any forward-looking statement to reflect any change in its expectations or any change in events, conditions or circumstances in which the forward-looking statement is based.

### Item 1. Business

Destination XL Group, Inc., together with its subsidiaries (the “Company”), is the largest specialty retailer of big & tall men’s apparel with retail locations in the United States, London, England and Toronto, Canada. We operate under the trade names of Destination XL®, DXL®, DXL Men’s Apparel, DXL outlets, Casual Male XL®, Casual Male XL outlets, Rochester Clothing, ShoesXL® and LivingXL®. We operate 212 DXL retail stores, 14 DXL outlet stores, 78 Casual Male XL retail stores, 33 Casual Male XL outlet stores and 5 Rochester Clothing stores. We also operate a direct business at DestinationXL.com, which also supports our stores, brands and product extensions. Unless the context indicates otherwise, all references to “we,” “our,” “ours,” “us” and “the Company” refer to Destination XL Group, Inc. and our consolidated subsidiaries. We refer to our fiscal years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016 as “fiscal 2017,” “fiscal 2016” and “fiscal 2015,” respectively. Fiscal 2017 was a 53-week year and fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015 were 52-week years.

#### OUR INDUSTRY

The big & tall men’s apparel market includes pants with a waist size of 42” and greater, as well as tops sized 1XL and greater. Growth in this segment has historically been driven by rapidly changing market demographics. We believe that we can increase our market share by catering to the broader target market, attracting customers from various income, age and lifestyle segments and offering the widest selection of sizes and styles that fit well. An opportunity also exists for market share growth from the lower-size range of our market, that is, men with a 38” to 46” waist size, which we define as our “end-of-rack” customers. These sizes are usually at the high end of the size range for most men’s apparel retailers and, as a result, the selection is usually limited at such retailers.

#### HISTORY

Our Company was incorporated in the State of Delaware in 1976 under the name Designs, Inc. Until fiscal 1995, we operated exclusively in Levi Strauss & Co. branded apparel mall and outlet stores. In May 2002, we acquired the Casual Male business from Casual Male Corp. at a bankruptcy court-ordered auction. At the time of the acquisition, Casual Male was the largest specialty retailer of men’s clothing in the big & tall market in the United States. As a result of the acquisition, on August 8, 2002, we changed our name to “Casual Male Retail Group, Inc.”

Through fiscal 2010, we primarily operated Casual Male XL retail stores, Casual Male XL outlet stores and Rochester Clothing stores, along with the associated websites and catalogs. We catered to all customers through these three store formats, from our value-oriented customer (Casual Male XL outlets) to our luxury-oriented customer (Rochester Clothing stores). During that year, we tested a new store concept, Destination XL (“DXL”). The DXL store concept merged all of our existing brands under one roof, offering our customers an extensive assortment of product and an increased presence of name brands, without having to shop multiple stores. In addition to offering our customers a wide assortment, we also wanted to provide them with a unique shopping experience. We are focused on providing outstanding customer service through our DXL stores, with everything from larger fitting rooms to professional, trained associates providing both personal attention and on-site tailoring. With the initial success of this store format, we then made a

similar change to our e-commerce business in fiscal 2011 when we launched our DestinationXL.com website which, like our DXL store, merged all of our previous websites into one consolidated e-commerce site providing our customers the ability to cross-shop our brands easily.

As part of our new direction, in December 2012, we changed our NASDAQ stock ticker symbol to “DXLG” and in February 2013 we changed our corporate name to “Destination XL Group, Inc.”

### **BUSINESS STRATEGY**

Over the past seven years, we have gradually transitioned the majority of our store base from our Casual Male XL retail and Rochester Clothing stores to our DXL Men’s Apparel store format. With over 225 DXL retail and outlet stores throughout the United States and two in Canada, we have substantially completed our build-out of new DXL stores. This represents a turning point in the evolution of our Company as the capital investment required to build out new stores becomes significantly less. We have now reached the point where our focus heading into fiscal 2018 is on customer acquisition, customer retention and customer re-activation, through improving traffic to our stores and enhancing the customer’s experience with our direct business. We are focused on the following four key ongoing initiatives and strategies:

- **Increasing Store Productivity:** Our store productivity metrics, such as dollars per transaction and conversion, have increased year-over-year, but we believe there is further opportunity to capture more customers and greater share of their wallets. One of our biggest challenges in recent years has been driving year-over-year increases in traffic to our stores. During fiscal 2018, we expect to launch a new television marketing campaign to create an emotional connection to our brand and generate a greater motivation to visit a store. We continue to invest in our store selling associates and foster a culture of XL style with every customer who walks through our door. We are also working to improve point-of-sale technology to make it easier and faster for our associates to access and sell inventory outside of the store’s four walls.

With respect to our remaining Casual Male XL retail and outlet stores, we are currently testing a DXL remodel approach as opposed to closing the Casual Male XL store and opening a DXL store nearby. In the second half of fiscal 2017, we converted two Casual Male XL stores to DXL stores and are tracking the results. If successful, we may continue to convert some of the remaining Casual Male XL stores over time. The majority of our Casual Male XL stores are profitable and can continue to coexist with DXL if we choose not to pursue further remodels; however, we do expect to close certain low volume Casual Male XL retail and outlet stores as lease terms expire.

- **Growing our Direct Business:** Our direct business represented approximately 21.0% of our total sales in fiscal 2017 and reached 23.1% in the fourth quarter, demonstrating the potential for rapid growth in this sales channel. We are committed to providing a first-class, online experience that allows our customers to shop anytime, anywhere, on any device while providing a level of service and customization similar to what they would receive in our stores. During the latter half of fiscal 2017, we made several foundational enhancements to our website to improve the overall shopping experience. We have observed a discernable traffic migration from desktop to mobile navigation on our e-commerce site, consistent with the expected increased use of smartphones and tablets by consumers in general. Because we target a very broad and diverse customer base, we believe it is critical to segment our customer base and communicate with our customers on a personal level. We are enabling new functionality that will allow us to tailor our messaging to specific customers, based on their buying patterns.

Expanding our reach through third party marketplaces such as Amazon is also a key initiative for us to grow our direct business. Marketplaces provide us with an opportunity to acquire new customers who are not familiar with our brand. We have been selling on Amazon marketplace for several years and have just recently begun to participate in Amazon’s seller-fulfilled Prime program.

- **Focusing on the Customer:** We are constantly striving to do a better job of acquiring, retaining and reactivating XL customers. Our primary tool for customer acquisition is our annual marketing campaign. For 2018, we expect to run two flights: 6 weeks in the Spring and 5 weeks in the Fall. Based on testing that we have performed, we believe that the most effective marketing campaign for the target XL customer is one that sparks an emotional connection with our brand. We will continue to glean insights from previous campaigns and modify our future campaigns in an effort to connect with target customers and communicate the brand’s benefits and why our target customers should shop with us.

We have a loyal customer base, with approximately 93% of our transactions processed through our loyalty program. Our customer response rates from loyalty offers are increasing, and the loyalty program allows us to communicate to our best customers in a manner that has a more exclusive look and feel and is an important tool for retention. We saw encouraging customer response to our loyalty perks in the fourth quarter of 2017, and we hope to build off of that progress in fiscal 2018 and motivate our existing customers to visit and shop more often and spend a greater share of their wallets with us.

- **Marketing our Merchandise Assortment:** Our good, better, best merchandise assortment strategy has been a cornerstone of our business. We have over 100 designer brands and a strong private label offering and we are able to customize the merchandise selection for every store. Our growth of the “end-of-rack” customer, which we define as customers with waist size 38” to 46”, is bringing in a younger, smaller-waist customer, who spends more and shops more often. We are responding to the demands of this new customer with our new “What’s on Tap” fashion-forward-product line which brings the newest fashion trends to our stores with limited lead times. In addition, where in the past lead time prevented us from replenishing in season, we are now able to react within 30 to 45 days. We are also looking at opportunities to deliver more fashion product to our smaller DXL stores that until now have been primarily assorted with core product. A key initiative of our marketing campaigns in 2018 will be messaging to our customers the quality, fit and breadth of our merchandise offerings.

## **OUR BUSINESS**

We operate as an omni-channel retailer of big & tall men’s apparel. Through our multiple brands, which include both branded apparel and private-label, we offer a broad range of merchandise at varying price points, catering from the value-oriented customer to the luxury-oriented customer. Our objective is to appeal to all of our customers by providing a good, better, best array of product assortments in all primary lifestyles with multiple and convenient ways to shop.

Our DXL retail stores and e-commerce site cater to all income demographics and offer our customers merchandise to fit a variety of lifestyles from casual to business, young to mature, in all price ranges and in all large sizes from XL and up. In addition, our e-commerce site includes a complete offering of shoes in sizes 10W to 18W. Our Casual Male XL stores primarily carry moderate-priced branded and private label casual sportswear and dresswear, while our Rochester Clothing stores carry fine quality, designer and branded menswear. We also operate Casual Male XL outlets and DXL outlets for our value-oriented customer.

Another important part of our business operation is managing the number of sizes offered to our customers and optimizing our in-stock position throughout each season. Our best-selling pant has 49 size combinations as compared to an average retailer who may only have 15 different size combinations. We maintain a consolidated inventory across all channels that enable us to manage our in-stock position of all sizes effectively, ultimately improving customer service. Moreover, our planning and allocation methodologies, with respect to store assortment planning, help to optimize each location’s market potential without excessive inventory levels.

## **MERCHANDISE**

We offer our customers a broad assortment of apparel that is appropriate to our diverse customer base. Regardless of our customers’ age, socioeconomic status, or lifestyle preference, we are able to assemble a wardrobe to fit our customers’ apparel needs. We offer such assortments in private-label product, balanced with an array of brand name labels. With over 5,000 styles available, we carry tops in sizes up to 8XL and 8XLT, bottoms with waist sizes 38” to 70”, and shoes in sizes 10W to 18W. In addition, we added to our product assortment a smaller fit XL and XLT to appeal to our target “end-of-rack” customer.

Our stores are merchandised to showcase entire outfits by lifestyle, including traditional, active, denim, young men’s, dress wear and contemporary. This format allows us to merchandise key items and seasonal goods in prominent displays and makes coordinating outfits easier for the customer while encouraging multi-item purchases. This lifestyle layout also allows us to manage store space and product assortment more effectively in each market to target local demographics. The key item strategy is also fully integrated by lifestyle, allowing us to focus on merchandise presentation and offer our customers a compelling value proposition.

Merchandise assortments in our DXL stores are organized not only by lifestyle, but within each lifestyle, the assortments are shown in a “good”, “better”, “best” and “luxury” visual presentation, again to benefit our customers’ ease of shopping. With the “best” merchandise assortments featured most prominently in the DXL store, our customers are able to visualize current fashion trends and select their wardrobes within their desired price points in a convenient manner.

We carry several well-known national brands of merchandise (“branded apparel”) as well as a number of our own private-label lines within our “good”, “better”, “best” and “luxury” price points. The penetration of branded apparel in our DXL stores can range from 15% to 80%, depending on several factors, but on average, our DXL stores carry approximately 50% branded merchandise.

### **Higher-End Luxury Fashion Apparel - “Best” and “Luxury” Merchandise**

Within this higher-end price range, we carry a broad selection of quality apparel from well-known branded manufacturers such as, Brooks Brothers®, The North Face®, Gran Sasso®, John Laing®, Remy, Psycho Bunny®, Derek Rose, Brioni®, Coppley, Eton®, Hickey Freeman®, Jack Victor®, Lucky, Michael Kors®, Pantherella®, Paul & Shark, JOE’S® Jeans, Robert Graham®, Robert Talbot, St. Hillaire, Ted Baker®, True Religion®, Turnbull & Asser®, Robert Barakett®, MVP®, and David Donahue®.

### ***Moderate-Priced Apparel -“Better” Merchandise***

We offer our customer an extensive selection of quality sportswear and dress clothing at moderate prices carrying such well-known brands such as: Buffalo Jeans®, Rainforest, Brooks Brothers®, O’Neill®, Retro Brand, Cutter & Buck®, Levis®, Adidas® Golf, Columbia, Berne®, Carhartt®, Callaway®, CK Jeans®, CK Sport®, Jockey®, Lacoste®, Majestic, Polo Ralph Lauren®, Tommy Bahama®, Tommy Hilfiger®, and Tallia®.

In addition, we carry several moderate-priced private-label lines:

- *Twenty Eight Degrees*™ is targeted as a contemporary/modern line offering sportswear and loungewear.
- *Society of One* is a jeanswear brand catering to the needs of the fashion denim customer.
- *Rochester* is a line that targets traditional luxury styles. We also offer a complete selection of sportcoats, dress shirts and neckwear under our *Rochester Black Label* private label.
- *What’s On Tap* is a fashion brand offering customers the newest fashion trends with speed to market execution. The line offers our customers the opportunity to wear the newest fashion trend before other big and tall retailers offer similar fashions.

### ***Value-Priced Apparel -“Good” Merchandise***

For our value-oriented customers, we carry Geoffrey Beene®, Cubavera, Nautica® and Nautica Jeans®, Dockers, Lee, Perry Ellis, Wrangler, Reebok and PX Clothing. In addition we carry several value-priced private label lines:

- *Harbor Bay*® was our first proprietary brand and it is a traditional line that continues to represent a significant portion of our business, specifically in terms of our core basic merchandise.
- *Gold Series*™ is our core performance offering of tailored-related separates, blazers, dress slacks, dress shirts and neckwear that blends comfort features such as stretch, stain resistance and wrinkle-free fabrics with basic wardrobe essentials.
- *Synrgy*™ targets the customer looking for a contemporary/modern look.
- *Oak Hill*® is a premier line catering to those customers looking for slightly more style and quality than our *Harbor Bay* line but still in a traditional lifestyle.
- *True Nation*® is a denim-inspired line consisting of vintage-screen t-shirts and wovens and is geared towards our younger customers.
- *Island Passport*® is an island-inspired line of camp shirts, printed woven shirts and relaxed island-inspired pants.

### ***RETAIL CHANNEL***

#### ***Destination XL Stores (“DXL”)***

Our DXL store concept brings all of our brands together in one format. Within this format, we cater to our diverse customer base, with merchandise representing all price points, from our luxury brands to value-oriented brands, and all lifestyles, from business to denim. The size of our current DXL stores, which contain almost triple the product assortments of a Casual Male XL store, averages 7,800 square feet. Since fiscal 2014, we have been opening smaller (5,000-6,500 square feet) DXL stores. Because the size of these stores is smaller, they carry a smaller product offering than our other DXL stores but are representative of the “good, better, best” merchandise variety. We seek to locate our DXL stores in places that are highly visible, preferably adjacent to regional malls or other high-traffic shopping areas.

Our DXL stores provide our customers a spacious store with up to three times the product offering of a Casual Male XL store. The merchandise in our DXL stores is organized by lifestyle: active, traditional, modern and denim with a representation of all of our brands and price points, utilizing a “good, better, best” pricing structure. Depending on the customers in each respective market, we can adjust the appropriate mix of merchandise, with varying selections from each of our price points, to cater to each demographic market. This larger store format also provides us the footprint necessary to carry a complete offering of dress wear, including tailored and “made-to-measure” custom clothing, as well as a selection of shoes in extended sizes and a broad assortment of accessories such as belts, ties, and socks.

During fiscal 2017, we opened 20 DXL retail stores and 1 DXL outlet store, bringing our store count at February 3, 2018 to 212 DXL retail stores and 14 DXL outlet stores. This includes two DXL retail stores which opened in Toronto, Canada during the first quarter of fiscal 2017. For fiscal 2018, we plan to open two DXL retail stores and one DXL outlet store, and to remodel two Casual Male XL retail stores to DXL retail stores.

### **Casual Male XL Retail Stores**

At February 3, 2018, we operated 78 Casual Male XL full-price retail stores, located primarily in strip centers or stand-alone locations. The majority of the merchandise carried in our Casual Male XL stores is moderate-priced basic or fashion-neutral items, such as jeans, casual slacks, t-shirts, polo shirts, dress shirts and suit separates. These stores also carry a full complement of our “better” private label collections. The average Casual Male XL retail store is approximately 3,400 square feet.

### **DXL Outlet /Casual Male XL Outlet Stores**

At February 3, 2018, we operated 33 Casual Male XL and 14 DXL outlet stores designed to offer a wide range of casual clothing for the big & tall customer at prices that are generally 20-25% lower than our moderate-priced merchandise. Much of the merchandise in our outlet stores is offered with the purchasing interests of the value-oriented customer in mind. In addition to private-label and branded merchandise at our “good” price tier, our outlets also carry clearance product obtained from DXL, Casual Male XL and Rochester Clothing stores, offering the outlet customer the ability to purchase branded and fashion product for a reduced price.

The average Casual Male XL outlet store is approximately 3,100 square feet and the average DXL outlet is approximately 5,100 square feet.

### **Rochester Clothing Stores**

At February 3, 2018, we operated 5 Rochester Clothing stores, located in major cities in the United States and one store in London, England. The Rochester Clothing stores have a wide selection of our “best” merchandise which consists primarily of high-end merchandise from well-recognized brands. In addition, these stores also carry a few private-label lines that are specifically designed for our high-end customer. The average Rochester Clothing store is approximately 10,000 square feet.

### **International**

In addition to our Rochester Clothing store located in London, England, we also have one franchised DXL store in the Middle East at the Symphony Mall in Kuwait City, Kuwait, which was opened in fiscal 2014 pursuant to a franchise agreement with The Standard Arabian Business & Enterprises Company (SABECO).

In the spring of fiscal 2017, we opened two DXL stores in Toronto, Canada. These are the first DXL brand stores operated by the Company outside of the United States. We believe that Canada provides a strategic growth opportunity for our DXL brand. We believe that the international big & tall men’s apparel market is currently underserved and we will continue to consider and evaluate opportunities for international growth in the future.

### **DIRECT CHANNEL**

Our direct business, which consists primarily of our e-commerce business, is a vital part of our growing omni-channel business approach, allowing us to service our customers whether it is in-person at a store, over the telephone, or online via a computer, smartphone or tablet. Our direct business enables the omni-channel approach by encouraging and expecting our store associates to use our e-commerce sites to help fulfill our customers’ clothing needs. If a wider selection of a lifestyle, color or size of an item is not available in our store, then our store associates can order the item for our customer through our direct channel and have it shipped to the store or directly to the customer. Our customers also have the ability to order online and pick-up in store on the same day.

With the ability to showcase all of our store inventories online, we are seeing an increase in the number of transactions that are initiated online but are ultimately completed in store. In addition, our stores are able to fulfill an order for an item that is out-of-stock in our warehouse. This capability has not only resulted in incremental sales, but it has also helped us reduce clearance merchandise at the store level and manage margins.

### **Destination XL® E-Commerce Site**

In fiscal 2013, we combined all of our then-existing web addresses and redirected our customers to the Destination XL website, keeping the individual landing pages for the respective sites. As part of our initiative to streamline and simplify the shopping experience for our customers, in the third quarter of fiscal 2017 we launched a redesign of our website, which included folding the individual landing pages into a single [www.destinationxl.com](http://www.destinationxl.com) landing page. Our redesigned website offers our customers a unique online experience, incorporating the visual merchandising and customer service expertise from our brick and mortar stores. Similar to our DXL store concept, our [www.destinationxl.com](http://www.destinationxl.com) website allows our customers to conveniently shop across all of our brands and product extensions.

Customers can search across all of our brands and, similar to our stores, shop merchandise from value-oriented to luxury price points. In addition, a customer can tailor their search using our “size profile.” Our Destination XL website also offers a complete line of men’s footwear in extended sizes, offering our customers a full range of footwear in hard-to-find sizes. Although our DXL stores all have a selection of footwear available, we are able to offer a full assortment of sizes and styles through our website. The assortment is a reflection of our apparel, with a broad selection from moderate to luxury and from casual to formal. We currently have a selection of more than 600 styles of shoes, ranging in sizes from 10W to 18W. We carry a number of designer brands including Cole Haan®, Allen Edmonds®, Timberland®, Calvin Klein®, Lacoste®, Donald J. Pliner and Bruno Magli®.

With more of our customers moving away from desktop toward their mobile devices, we have taken a “mobile-first” mindset on designing customer interactions as we continue to innovate and enhance the customer’s shopping experience. Our mobile optimized website, m.destinationxl.com, and our recently launched mobile app help our customers browse products, checkout, access our loyalty program information, research inventory in a local store, and find a local store location.

We believe that our customers’ interactions with us, on a digital level, are key to customer retention and future growth. We are elevating our customer relation management (“CRM”) system to create a platform where we have a 360-view of our customer beyond just a history of past purchases and preferences. Infusing third-party data and predictive shopping habits, we will have the ability to engage with our customers in a more personalized level.

In addition to our Destination XL website, our customers can also access our LivingXL website directly from our homepage. LivingXL is an online-only store that specializes in the selling of select high-quality products which help larger people maintain a more comfortable lifestyle. The types of products sold on our website benefit both men and women and include chairs, outdoor accessories, travel accessories, bed and bath and fitness equipment.

For our international customers, upon entering our full site, these visitors are identified based on where they reside globally and are able to shop in their local currency. In addition, checkout is customized based on their location, with local payment methods and a guaranteed cost including shipping and taxes.

### **Online Marketplaces**

Broadening our reach through online marketplaces continues to be a growth initiative for our direct business. During fiscal 2017, we elevated our positioning with Amazon and now have a large portion of our assortment available with Amazon Prime shipping. Online marketplaces, such as Amazon, Walmart.com and Jet.com, provide us an opportunity to grow our customer base and introduce them to our brand.

### ***MERCHANDISE PLANNING AND ALLOCATION***

Our merchandise planning and allocation function is critical to the effective management of our inventory, store assortments, product sizes and overall gross margin profitability. The merchandise planning and allocation team has an array of planning and replenishment tools available to assist in maintaining an appropriate level of inventory, in-stock positions at the store and for the direct channel, and pre-season planning for product assortments for each store and the direct channel. Additionally, in-season reporting identifies opportunities and challenges in inventory performance. Over the past several years, we have made and will continue to make investments in implementing best practice tools and processes for our merchandise planning and allocation.

Our core merchandise makes up approximately 38% of our merchandise assortment. Our planning and allocation team estimates quantity and demand several months in advance to optimize gross margin and minimize end-of-season merchandise for all seasonal merchandise. We develop customized assortment strategies by store that accentuate lifestyle preferences for each particular store.

Our merchandising data warehouse provides the merchandising team with standardized reporting for monitoring assortment performance by product category and by store, identifying in-stock positions by size and generally monitoring overall inventory levels relative to selling. At season end, we analyze the overall performance of product categories, overall assortments and specific styles by store to focus on the opportunities and challenges for the next season’s planning cycle.

Utilizing a set of specific universal reporting tools, we are able to fulfill the daily, weekly and monthly roles and responsibilities of the merchandise planning and allocation team. These reporting tools provide focused and actionable views of the business to optimize the overall assortment by category and by store. We believe that by having all members of the merchandise planning and allocation team follow a standardized set of processes with the use of standardized reporting tools, our inventory performance will be optimized.

## **STORE OPERATIONS**

We believe that our store associates are the key to creating the highest quality experience for our customers. Beginning with the advent of our initial testing of DXL stores, we committed to change the culture in our stores from an operationally-driven organization to a sales-driven, customer-centric organization. Our overall goal was to assist our associates in becoming less task-oriented and more focused on serving the customer. We want our associates to help our customer meet his apparel needs through building his wardrobe; not just selling our customer a single item. In order to accomplish this, we invested in educating our associates. Our associates are trained to be clothing experts, capable of accommodating our customer's style and fit needs with ready-to-wear clothing. Our associates' ability to be well versed in not only the product selection carried in their store, but also globally, coupled with access to order items for the customer via the web in-store, allows our associates to fulfill all of their customers' needs. Our stores also offer on-site tailoring in order to assist customers in receiving a perfect fit. In addition to product knowledge, our training approach includes behavioral training as well. A key component to the success of this program is finding the right caliber of store associates. Our multi-unit, field management team receives extensive training on recruiting associates who are the correct fit for our stores. Our new DXL store management team hires are enrolled in "The DXL Experience Training Program," with time spent in one of our two Regional Training Centers. The culture has been created over the last eight years to promote from our internal associates, starting at the Assistant Store Manager level up to, and including, the Vice President of Operations level. Our Regional Vice-Presidents give us touch-points in the field in addition to the Regional Sales Managers and the store management to ensure consistency in executing our standards and all programs and processes we deem important to our success.

Each new store management team member spends time in a DXL store, working with certified training managers to solidify their training before they are released to their "home" store. This allows each new store management team member to apply the skills learned during "The DXL Experience Training Program" so they in turn will have the tools to manage their respective stores successfully. We are able to gauge the effectiveness of our training through measuring sales productivity at each level of the field organization, including individual sales associates. We believe these educational programs, together with monitoring sales metrics to help identify opportunities for further training, will improve sales productivity and strengthen our customer's brand loyalty.

Each DXL, Casual Male XL and Rochester Clothing store is staffed with a store manager, assistant managers and associates. The store manager is responsible for achieving certain sales and operational targets. Our stores have an incentive-based commission plan for managers and selling staff to encourage associates to focus on our customer's wardrobing needs and sales productivity. Our field organization strives to promote from within - a culture that has been building for eight years, with approximately 90% of the field organization's multi-unit managers having managed one of our retail stores.

Our field organization is overseen by our Executive Vice President and Chief Customer Officer, Senior Vice President of Store Sales and Operations, Regional Vice Presidents and Regional Sales Managers, who provide management development and guidance to individual store managers. Each Regional Sales Manager is responsible for hiring and developing store managers at the stores assigned to that Regional Sales Manager's market, and for the overall operations and profitability of those stores.

## **MARKETING AND ADVERTISING**

We believe marketing and advertising are key drivers in increasing brand awareness which, in turn, increases traffic to our stores and online. Our marketing focus is on increasing the awareness of our DXL brand, so shoppers will think of us when they decide to purchase men's XL clothing or accessories. With only 4 out of every 10 men aware of who we are, we believe we have a great opportunity to build our customer base and increase market share. In fiscal 2016, we experienced a drop in our brand recognition, which was the result of decreased spending on national media. In fiscal 2017, we aired TV and Radio for 14 weeks, compared to only 6 weeks in fiscal 2016, which had a measurable impact brand awareness and customer count as we saw our brand awareness increase from 34% at the end of fiscal 2016 to 42% at the end of fiscal 2017.

In fiscal 2017, we increased our marketing expenses to \$29.5 million, with an emphasis on new creative and additional digital advertising. In fiscal 2018, we expect marketing expenses to be \$24.0 million. Our 2018 marketing program will include two media campaigns: first, our Spring campaign, which will run up to Father's Day; second, our Fall/Holiday campaign, which will run for 6 weeks. We are also launching new creative advertising for 2018, which will emphasize fit, expertise, brands, in-store experience, and one-stop shopping. The new campaign will highlight DXL's key differentiators and will seek to spark an emotional connection with our core consumer. In addition to adding back television to aid in growing the customer count, we plan to focus more aggressively on our customer loyalty program. Our loyalty program has consistently delivered better response rates as compared to our other direct marketing programs. Approximately 93% of customers in our active customer base are enrolled in our loyalty program, resulting in a more than 59% DXL customer corporate retention rate. On a rolling twelve-month basis, our DXL retail stores have an almost 35% higher customer retention rate than our Casual Male XL retail stores. In addition, we will focus on personalization in our email marketing and digital programs, which we believe will make our reduced marketing spend in 2018 more cost effective. We will also be implementing a new CRM system to support our direct marketing efforts.

As we close more of our Casual Male XL stores in fiscal 2018, we will continue our efforts to increase awareness of the DXL brand and convert Casual Male XL customers to our DXL stores. We have converted more than 51% of our Casual Male XL customers since we began our transition over to DXL. Our focus will continue to be on transitioning our best Casual Male XL customers first, followed by other active, high-sales-contributing tiers of customers.

### **GLOBAL SOURCING**

We have strong experience in sourcing internationally, particularly in Asia, where we manufacture a significant percentage of our private-label merchandise. We have established relationships with some of the leading factories. Our sourcing network consists of over 21 factories in 4 countries. Currently, approximately 50% of all our product needs are sourced directly.

Our global sourcing strategy is a balanced approach considering quality, cost and lead time, depending on the requirements of the program. We believe our current sourcing structure is sufficient to meet our operating requirements and provide capacity for growth. The growth and effectiveness of our global direct sourcing program is a key component to the strength of merchandise margins.

In an effort to minimize foreign currency risk, all payments to our direct sourced vendors and buying agents are made in U.S. dollars through the use of letters of credit or payment on account.

### **DISTRIBUTION**

All of our distribution operations are centralized at our headquarters located in Canton, Massachusetts. However, if merchandise is available at the store level but not available at the distribution center, our stores are capable of completing the order and shipping it directly to a customer.

We believe that having one centralized distribution facility minimizes the delivered cost of merchandise and maximizes the in-stock position of our stores. We believe that the centralized distribution system enables our stores to maximize selling space by reducing necessary levels of back-room stock carried in each store. In addition, the distribution center provides order fulfillment services for our e-commerce business.

Since 2003, we have utilized United Parcel Services (“UPS”) for all of our store shipments as well as our domestic customer deliveries. By utilizing UPS, we are able to track all deliveries from the warehouse to our individual stores, including the status of in-transit shipments. In addition, we are able to provide our direct customers with Authorized Return Service and Web labels, making returns more convenient for them. Our current contract with UPS is through January 5, 2020.

In order to service our International customers, we have contracted with a global e-commerce company for payment and shipment services. Through this service, international customers view and pay for products in their local currency. Our vendor then ships directly to our customer, which we believe helps avoid potential fraud and currency exchange rate risks.

Our warehousing application for our distribution center systems streamlines our distribution processes, enhances our in-transit times, and reduces our distribution costs substantially. Over the past several years, we have made improvements to our software such as automated packing for single piece orders, barcode scanning technologies and scanning technologies for our sortation systems, in order to improve productivity and to lower packing costs.

Our supply chain technology provides visibility for imports and domestic deliveries giving our buyers accurate shipping information and allowing the distribution center to plan staffing for arriving freight, resulting in reduced costs and improved receipt efficiency.

In-bound calls for our direct business are currently handled at our Canton facility and are primarily fulfilled by our distribution center. If an order cannot be fulfilled by our distribution center, the order is completed at the store level.

### **MANAGEMENT INFORMATION SYSTEMS**

The infrastructure of our management information systems is a priority to us. We believe that the investments we have made in this regard have improved our overall efficiency and most importantly have enabled us to manage our inventory more effectively.

Our management information systems consist of a full range of retail merchandising and financial systems which include merchandise planning and reporting, distribution center processing, inventory allocation, sales reporting, and financial processing and reporting. We believe that our current infrastructure provides us the ability and capacity to process transactions more efficiently and provides our management team with comprehensive tools with which to manage our business.

Using a retail business intelligence solution, we are able to integrate data from several sources and provide enterprise-wide analytics reporting. Over the past few years, we have developed a custom Assortment Suite application that leverages business intelligence and predictive analytics to provide high impact insights into core merchandising tasks. In an effort to further improve our inventory management, we have created a standardized set of “best practices” for both our merchandise planning and allocation groups.

Our direct business and retail business maintain a shared inventory system and we operate a single system platform for DXL, Casual Male XL and Rochester Clothing to deliver improved efficiencies and to make our full product assortment available to all of our business formats.

In fiscal 2018, we plan to upgrade our order management systems, which will upgrade our warehouse management and logistics capabilities for enhanced inventory visibility and order fulfillment. We continually work to improve our web environment. Our mobile optimized site capitalizes on the growing use of mobile devices to look up store information, review product offerings, and complete purchases. We have a tablet optimized website to further capitalize on the continued growth of mobile e-commerce, and in fiscal 2017 we launched our mobile app. In addition, our current website is fully integrated with a global e-commerce company to accommodate international customers by providing multi-currency pricing, payment processing, and international shipping. Functionality was also implemented to support an online custom shirt program and an in-store application to support both a custom suit and custom shirt program.

### **COMPETITION**

Our business faces competition from a variety of sources, including department stores such as Macy’s and Dillard’s, mass merchandisers, other specialty stores and discount and off-price retailers, as well as other retailers that sell big & tall men’s apparel. While we have successfully competed on the basis of merchandise selection, comfort and fit, customer service and desirable store locations, there can be no assurances that other retailers, including e-commerce retailers, will not adopt purchasing and marketing concepts similar to ours. Discount retailers with significant buying power, such as Wal-Mart and J.C. Penney, represent a source of competition for us. The direct business has several competitors, including the King Size catalog and website as well as online marketplaces, such as Amazon.

The United States big & tall men’s apparel market is highly competitive with many national and regional department stores, specialty apparel retailers, single market operators and discount stores offering a broad range of apparel products similar to ours. Besides retail competitors, we consider any casual apparel manufacturer operating in outlet malls throughout the United States to be a competitor in the casual apparel market. We believe that we are the only national operator of apparel stores focused on the men’s big & tall market.

### **SEASONALITY**

Historically, and consistent with the retail industry, we have experienced seasonal fluctuations as it relates to our operating income and net income. Traditionally, a significant portion of our operating income and net income is generated in the fourth quarter, as a result of the holiday season.

### **TRADEMARKS/TRADEMARK LICENSE AGREEMENTS**

We own several service marks and trademarks relating to our businesses, including, among others, “Destination XL®”, “DXL®”, “DXL Mens Apparel®”, “Big on Being Better®”, “Casual Male®”, “Casual Male XL®”, “Rochester Clothing®”, “Rochester Big & Tall®”, “Harbor Bay®”, “Oak Hill®”, “Comfort Zone®”, “Synrgy™”, “Twenty-Eight Degrees™”, “Society of One®” and “True Nation®”. We also hold a U.S. patent for an extendable collar system, which is marketed as “Neck-Relaxer®” and a U.S. copyright for a no-iron hang tag.

### **EMPLOYEES**

As of February 3, 2018, we had approximately 2,634 employees. We hire additional temporary employees during the peak Fall and Holiday seasons. None of our employees is represented by any collective bargaining agreement.

### **AVAILABLE INFORMATION**

Our corporate website is [www.destinationxl.com](http://www.destinationxl.com). Our investor relations site is <http://investor.destinationxl.com>. We make available through our website, free of charge, our Annual Reports on Form 10-K, Quarterly Reports on Form 10-Q, Current Reports on Form 8-K and all amendments to such reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, as soon as reasonably practicable after we have electronically filed such material with, or furnished such materials to, the Securities and Exchange Commission. The SEC maintains an internet site that contains reports, proxy and information statements, and other information for issuers that file electronically with the SEC at <http://www.sec.gov>.

## **Item 1A. Risk Factors**

The following discussion identifies certain important factors that could affect our financial position, our actual results of operations and our actions and could cause our financial position, results of operations and our actions to differ materially from any forward-looking statements made by or on behalf of our Company.

The following risk factors are the important factors of which we are aware that could cause actual results, performance or achievements to differ materially from those expressed in any of our forward-looking statements. We operate in a continually changing business environment and new risk factors emerge from time to time. Other unknown or unpredictable factors also could have material adverse effects on our future results, performance or achievements. We cannot assure you that our projected results or events will be achieved or will occur.

### **Risks Related to Our Company and Our Industry**

#### **We may not be successful in executing our DXL strategy and growing our market share.**

Through the end of fiscal 2017, we have opened over 225 DXL retail and outlet stores in the United States and Canada while closing many of our Casual Male XL and Rochester Clothing stores. In fiscal 2017 we slowed the pace of our store openings with an increased focus on growing our direct business and increasing store productivity. For us to be successful in the future and maintain growth, we must be able to continue increasing our share of the big & tall men's apparel market. Our growth is dependent on our ability to continue to build upon our DXL brand, maintain and convert our existing Casual Male XL and Rochester Clothing customers to DXL, and continuing to attract new customers. Our failure to execute successfully our strategy could prevent us from growing our market share, which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations, cash flows and financial position, including if we were unable to:

- grow our DXL e-commerce business;
- predict and respond to fashion trends, while offering our customers a broad selection of merchandise in an extended selection of sizes;
- maintain an effective marketing program to build brand, store and digital awareness as well as increase store traffic;
- maintain our existing customer base;
- attract and retain new customers;
- hire qualified store management and store associates;
- exit existing lease agreements at the end of the lease or on favorable terms;
- effectively open and close stores within established cost parameters;
- continue to grow and then sustain number of transactions, units-per-transaction and share of wallet; and
- operate at appropriate operating margins.

#### **Our marketing programs and success in maintaining and building our brand awareness, driving traffic and converting that traffic into an increased loyal customer base are critical to achieving market share growth within the big & tall men's apparel market**

Our ability to increase our share of the big & tall men's apparel market is largely dependent on building and maintaining favorable brand recognition for our DXL stores and digital channels and effectively marketing our merchandise to all of our target customers in several diverse market segments so that they will become loyal shoppers who spend a greater portion of their wallet on our product offerings. In order to grow our brand recognition and our market share, we depend on the successful development of our brand through marketing and advertising in a variety of ways, including television and radio advertising, advertising events, loyalty programs, digital marketing, including social media, e-commerce and customer prospecting. Our business is directly impacted by the success of these efforts and those of our vendors. Future advertising efforts by us, our vendors or our other licensors, may be costly and, if not successful, may negatively impact our ability to meet our sales goals and to increase our market share and revenues.

#### **Our business is seasonal and is affected by general economic conditions.**

Our business is seasonal. Historically, a significant portion of our operating income has been generated during our fourth quarter (November-January). If, for any reason, we miscalculate the demand for our products during our fourth quarter, our sales in this quarter could decline, resulting in higher labor costs as a percentage of sales, lower margins and excess inventory, which could cause our annual operating results to suffer. In addition, our operations may be negatively affected by local, regional or national economic conditions, such as levels of disposable consumer income, consumer debt, interest rates and consumer confidence. Due to our seasonality, the possible adverse impact from such risks is potentially greater if any such risks occur during our fourth quarter.

**Our ability to operate and expand our business and to respond to changing business and economic conditions will depend on the availability of adequate capital.**

The operation of our business, the rate of our expansion and our ability to respond to changing business and economic conditions depend on the availability of adequate capital, which in turn depends on cash flow generated by our business and, if necessary, the availability of equity or debt capital. We will also need sufficient cash flow to meet our obligations under our existing debt agreements.

The amount that we are able to borrow and have outstanding under our credit facility at any given time is determined using an availability formula based on eligible assets. As a result, our ability to borrow is subject to certain risks and uncertainties, such as advance rates and the amount and quality of inventory, which could reduce the funds available to us under our credit facility.

We cannot assure you that our cash flow from operations or cash available under our credit facility will be sufficient to meet our needs. If we are unable to generate sufficient cash flows from operations in the future, we may have to obtain additional financing. If we incur additional indebtedness, that indebtedness may contain significant financial and other covenants that may significantly restrict our operations. We cannot ensure that we could obtain refinancing or additional financing on favorable terms or at all.

**Our business may be adversely affected by economic and political issues abroad and changes in U.S. economic policies.**

Economic and civil unrest in areas of the world where we source merchandise for our global sourcing program, as well as shipping and docking issues, could adversely impact the availability and cost of such merchandise. Disruptions in the global transportation network, such as political instability, the financial instability of our suppliers, merchandise quality issues, trade restrictions, labor and port strikes, tariffs, currency exchange rates, transport capacity and costs, inflation and other factors relating to foreign trade are beyond our control. In the event of disruptions or delays in deliveries due to economic or political conditions in foreign countries, such disruptions or delays could adversely affect our results of operations unless and until alternative supply arrangements could be made. These and other issues affecting our suppliers could adversely affect our business and financial performance.

In addition, the enactment of any new legislation in the U.S. that would impact current international trade regulations, exports or imports or tax policy with respect to foreign activities, or executive action affecting international trade agreements, including the uncertainty concerning the trading status of certain countries and/or retaliatory duties, taxes, quotas or other trade sanctions, could increase the cost of merchandise purchased from suppliers in such countries and could adversely affect our business and financial performance.

**The loss of, or disruption in, our centralized distribution center could negatively impact our business and operations.**

The majority of our merchandise for our stores and e-commerce operations is received into our centralized distribution center in Canton, Massachusetts, where it is then processed, sorted and shipped to our stores or directly to our customers. We depend in large part on the orderly operation of this receiving and distribution process, which depends, in turn, on adherence to shipping schedules and effective management of the distribution center. Although we believe that our receiving and distribution process is efficient and well-positioned to support our strategic plans, events beyond our control, such as disruptions in operations due to fire or other catastrophic events, employee matters or shipping problems, could result in delays in the delivery of merchandise to our stores or directly to our customers.

With all of our management information systems centralized in our corporate headquarters, any disruption or destruction of our system infrastructure could materially affect our business. This type of disaster is mitigated by our offsite storage and disaster recovery plans, but we would still incur business interruption that may impact our business for several weeks.

Although we maintain business interruption and property insurance, we cannot be sure that our insurance will be sufficient, or that insurance proceeds will be timely paid to us, in the event our distribution center is shut down for any reason or if we incur higher costs and longer lead times in connection with a disruption from our distribution center.

**If we are unable to develop and implement our omni-channel initiatives successfully, our market share and financial results could be adversely affected.**

Our customer's shopping behavior continues to evolve across multiple channels and we are working to meet his needs. While we consider ourselves an omni-channel retailer, we continue to make ongoing investments in our information technology systems to support evolving omni-channel capabilities.

Omni-channel retailing is rapidly evolving and our success depends on our ability to anticipate and implement innovations in sales and marketing technology and logistics in order to appeal to existing and potential customers who increasingly rely on multiple channels to meet their shopping needs. In addition, our competitors are also investing in omni-channel initiatives, some of which may be more successful than our initiatives.

If the investment in our omni-channel initiatives is not successful, our systems are unable to support such initiatives, or if our competitors are more successful, our financial results and our market penetration may be adversely affected.

**Our direct business is a significant component of our growth strategy, and the failure to develop our e-commerce and internet infrastructure could disrupt our business and negatively impact our sales.**

We continue to have increasing levels of sales made through on-line shopping and via mobile devices. We have made significant investments in capital spending and labor to develop these channels and invested in digital media to attract new customers. Growth of our overall sales is dependent on customers continuing to expand their on-line purchases in addition to in-store purchases. We cannot accurately predict the rate at which online purchases will expand.

Our success in growing our e-commerce activities will depend in part upon our development of an increasingly sophisticated e-commerce experience and infrastructure. Increasing customer sophistication requires that we provide additional website features and functionality, in order to be competitive in the marketplace and maintain market share. We continually update our website features, but we cannot predict future trends and required functionality or our adoption rate for customer preferences. In addition, we are vulnerable to additional risks and uncertainties associated with e-commerce sales, including security breaches, cyber-attacks, consumer privacy concerns, changes in state tax regimes and government regulation of internet activities. Our failure to respond to these risks and uncertainties successfully could reduce our e-commerce sales, increase our costs and diminish our growth prospects, which could negatively impact our operating results.

**Our business may be adversely affected by the failure to identify suitable store locations and acceptable lease terms. In addition, some of our new stores may open in locations close enough to our existing stores to negatively impact sales at those locations.**

We currently lease all of our store locations. Identifying and securing suitable store locations at acceptable lease terms is critical to our store growth. We generally have been able to negotiate acceptable lease rates and extensions, as needed. However, we cannot be certain that desirable locations at acceptable lease rates and preferred lease terms will continue to be available. Once we decide on a prospective new store or new market and find a suitable location, any delays in opening new stores could impact our financial results. In addition, if we need to pay higher occupancy costs in the future to secure ideal locations, the increased cost may adversely impact our financial performance and liquidity. Recent trends toward increased landlord consolidation could also negatively affect our ability to obtain and retain locations.

As we open additional locations in existing markets, some new stores may open in locations close enough to our existing stores to impact sales and profitability at the store level, which may also adversely affect our profitability.

**Our business is highly competitive, and competitive factors may reduce our revenues and profit margins.**

The United States big & tall men's apparel market is highly competitive with many national and regional department stores, mass merchandisers, specialty apparel retailers, discount stores and online retailers offering a broad range of apparel products similar to the products that we sell. Besides retail competitors, we consider any manufacturer of big & tall men's merchandise operating in outlet malls throughout the United States to be a competitor. It is also possible that another competitor, either a mass merchant or a men's specialty store or specialty apparel catalog, could gain market share in big & tall men's apparel due to more favorable pricing, locations, brand and fashion assortment and size availability. Many of our competitors and potential competitors may have substantially greater financial, manufacturing and marketing resources than we do.

The presence in the marketplace of various fashion trends and the limited availability of shelf space also can affect competition. We may not be able to compete successfully with our competitors in the future and could lose brand recognition and market share. A significant loss of market share would adversely affect our revenues and results of operations.

In addition, we maintain exclusivity arrangements with several of the brands that we carry. If we were to lose any of these exclusivity arrangements or brands altogether, our revenues may be adversely affected.

**If our long-lived assets become impaired, we may need to record significant non-cash impairment charges.**

Periodically, we review our long-lived assets for impairment whenever economic events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying value of an asset may not be recoverable. Specifically, if an individual store location is unable to generate sufficient future cash flows, we may be required to record a partial or full impairment of that store's assets. In addition, significant negative industry or general economic trends, disruptions to our business and unexpected significant changes or planned changes in our use of the assets (such as store relocations or closures) may also result in impairment charges. Any such impairment charges, if significant, could adversely affect our financial position and results of operations.

**We may not be successful expanding our business internationally.**

Our future growth strategy includes plans to open stores internationally, most likely using a franchise and licensing model. Customer demand, as well as a lack of familiarity with our brands, may differ internationally, and as a result, we may have difficulty attracting customers and growing brand awareness. In addition, our ability to conduct business internationally may be adversely impacted by political and economic risks. Our failure to expand internationally may limit our future growth opportunities.

We also have risks related to identifying suitable franchisees. Our franchise arrangements will limit our direct control, such as the ability of these third parties to meet their projections regarding store openings and sales, as well as their compliance with applicable laws and regulations. As such, we cannot ensure our profitability or success in international markets. In addition, the failure of these third parties to operate the stores in a manner consistent with our standards may adversely affect our brands and reputation.

**We are dependent on third parties for the manufacture of the merchandise we sell.**

We do not own or operate any manufacturing facilities and are therefore entirely dependent on third parties to manufacture the merchandise we sell. Without adequate supplies of merchandise to sell to our customers in the merchandise styles and fashions demanded by our particular customer base, sales would decrease materially and our business would suffer. We are dependent on these third parties' ability to fulfill our merchandise orders and meet our delivery terms. In the event that manufacturers are unable or unwilling to ship products to us in a timely manner or continue to manufacture products for us, we would have to rely on other current manufacturing sources or identify and qualify new manufacturers. We might not be able to identify or qualify such manufacturers for existing or new products in a timely manner and such manufacturers might not allocate sufficient capacity to us in order to meet our requirements. Our inability to secure adequate and timely supplies of private label merchandise would negatively impact proper inventory levels, sales and gross margin rates, and ultimately our results of operations.

In addition, even if our current manufacturers continue to manufacture our products, they may not maintain adequate controls with respect to product specifications and quality and may not continue to produce products that are consistent with our standards. If we are forced to rely on manufacturers who produce products of inferior quality, then our brand recognition and customer satisfaction would likely suffer. These manufacturers may also increase the cost to us of the products we purchase from them.

A significant portion of our merchandise is imported directly from other countries, and U.S. domestic suppliers who source their goods from other countries supply most of our remaining merchandise. If the U.S. Government imposes significant tariffs or other restrictions on foreign imports, we may need to increase our prices which could adversely affect our revenues and merchandise margins.

Furthermore, in the event that commercial transportation is curtailed or substantially delayed, we may not be able to maintain adequate inventory levels of important merchandise on a consistent basis, which would negatively impact our sales and potentially erode the confidence of our customer base, leading to further loss of sales and an adverse impact on our results of operations.

**Fluctuations in the price, availability and quality of raw materials and finished goods could increase costs.**

Fluctuations in the price, availability and quality of fabrics or other raw materials used in the manufacturing of our merchandise could have a material adverse effect on our gross margin or on our ability to meet our customers' demands. The prices for fabrics depend on demand and market prices for the raw materials used to produce them. To the extent that we cannot offset these cost increases with other cost reductions or efficiencies, such higher costs will need to be passed on to our customers. Such increased costs could lead to reduced customer demand, which could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations and cash flow.

**Our success depends significantly on our key personnel and our ability to attract and retain additional personnel.**

Our future success is dependent on the personal efforts, performance and abilities of our key management which includes our executive officer as well as several significant members of our senior management. The loss of any of our senior management may result in a loss of organizational focus, poor operating execution, an inability to identify and execute strategic initiatives, an impairment in our ability to identify new store locations, and an inability to consummate possible acquisitions. As disclosed, subsequent to the end of fiscal 2017, on March 23, 2018, David Levin announced that he is planning to retire as President and Chief Executive Officer and as a director of the Company by the end of 2018. Mr. Levin is also prepared to provide transition support and assist on requested projects following his retirement as CEO. The Board of Directors has initiated a search process to identify a successor for Mr. Levin and will review both external and internal candidates. See Note K, Subsequent Event, to the Consolidated Financial Statements for more information.

The competition is intense for the type of highly skilled individuals with relevant industry experience that we require and we may not be able to attract and retain new employees of the caliber needed to achieve our objectives.

**Our business may be negatively impacted and we may be liable if third parties misappropriate proprietary information of our customers and breach our security systems.**

We may be harmed by security risks we face in connection with our electronic processing and transmission of confidential customer information. During fiscal 2017, approximately 85% of our sales were settled through credit and debit card transactions. While our Board of Directors approved the formation of the Cybersecurity and Data Privacy Committee to oversee the monitoring and management of cyber risk and data privacy for our Company, and we have not had any security breaches to date, any breach could expose us to risks of loss, litigation and liability and could adversely affect our operations as well as cause our shoppers to stop shopping with us as a result of their lack of confidence in the security of their personally identifiable information, which could have a negative impact on our sales and profitability. Like many retailers, we have seen an increase in cyberattack attempts, predominantly through phishing and social engineering scams, and in particular, ransomware. While none of these attempts have been successful, there can be no assurance that our continued security measures will be effective or sufficient in the future. If third parties are able to penetrate our network security or otherwise misappropriate the personal information or credit card information of our customers or if third parties gain unauthorized and improper access to such information, we could be subject to liability. These liabilities could include claims for unauthorized purchases with credit card information, impersonation or other similar fraud claims, or claims for other misuses of personal information, including unauthorized marketing purposes, and could ultimately result in litigation. Liability for misappropriation of this information could be significant.

Further, if a third party were to use this proprietary customer information in order to compete with us, it could have a material adverse impact on our business and could result in litigation.

**We may be unable to predict fashion trends and customer preferences successfully.**

Customer tastes and fashion trends are volatile and tend to change rapidly. Our success depends in large part upon our ability to predict effectively and respond to changing fashion tastes and consumer demands and to translate market trends to appropriate saleable product offerings. If we are unable to predict or respond to changing styles or trends successfully and misjudge the market for products or any new product lines, our sales will be impacted and we may be faced with a substantial amount of unsold inventory or missed opportunities. In response, we may be forced to rely on additional markdowns or promotional sales to dispose of excess, slow-moving inventory, which would decrease our revenues and margins. In addition, the failure to satisfy consumer demand, specifically in our DXL stores and websites, could have serious longer-term consequences, such as an adverse impact on our brand value and the loss of market share to our competitors.

**The loss of any of our key trademarks or licenses could adversely affect demand for our products.**

We own and use a number of trademarks and operate under several trademark license agreements. We believe that certain of these trademarks have significant value and are instrumental in our ability to create and sustain demand for and to market our products. We cannot be certain that these trademarks and licensing agreements will remain in effect and enforceable or that any license agreements, upon expiration, can be renewed on acceptable terms or at all. In addition, any future disputes concerning these trademarks and licenses may cause us to incur significant litigation costs or force us to suspend use of the disputed trademarks.

**Acts of terrorism or a catastrophic event could negatively impact our operating results and financial condition.**

Unforeseen events, including war, terrorism and other international conflicts, public health issues, and natural disasters such as earthquakes, hurricanes or other adverse weather and climate conditions, whether occurring in the U.S. or abroad, could disrupt our operations, or the operations of our vendors and other suppliers, or result in political or economic instability.

The continued threat of terrorism and heightened security measures in response to an act of terrorism may disrupt commerce and undermine consumer confidence which could negatively impact our sales by causing consumer spending to decline. Furthermore, an act of terrorism or war, or the threat thereof, could negatively impact our business by interfering with our ability to obtain merchandise from vendors or substitute suppliers at similar costs in a timely manner.

**Our business depends on our ability to meet our labor needs.**

Our success depends in part upon our ability to attract, motivate and retain a sufficient number of qualified employees, including store managers and sales associates, who understand and appreciate our product offerings and are able to represent our products to our customers adequately. Qualified individuals of the requisite caliber and number needed to fill these positions may be in short supply in some areas, and the turnover rate in the retail industry is high. If we are unable to hire and retain sales associates capable of consistently providing a high level of customer service, our business could be materially adversely affected. Although none of our employees is currently covered by collective bargaining agreements, our employees may elect to be represented by labor unions in the future, which could increase our labor costs. Additionally, competition for qualified employees could require us to pay higher wages to attract a sufficient number of adequate employees. An inability to recruit and retain a sufficient number of qualified individuals in the future may delay the planned openings of new stores or outlets. Any such delays, any material increases in employee turnover rates at existing stores or outlets or any increases in labor costs could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition or operating results.

**Failure to comply with laws, rules and regulations could negatively affect our business operations and financial performance.**

Our business is subject to federal, state, local and international laws, rules and regulations, such as state and local wage and hour laws, the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act, the Employee Retirement Income Security Act (“ERISA”), securities laws, import and export laws (including customs regulations), privacy and information security regulations, unclaimed property laws, the Affordable Care Act and many others. The effect of some of these laws and regulations may be to increase the cost of doing business and may have a material impact on our earnings. In addition, the complexity of the regulatory environment in which we operate and the related cost of compliance are both increasing due to legal and regulatory requirements and increased enforcement. In addition, as a result of operating in the U.K., we must comply with that country’s laws and regulations, which may differ substantially from, and may conflict with, corresponding U.S. laws and regulations. We may also be subject to investigations or audits by governmental authorities and regulatory agencies, which can occur in the ordinary course of business or which can result from increased scrutiny from a particular agency towards an industry, country or practice. If we fail to comply with laws, rules and regulations or the manner in which they are interpreted or applied, we may be subject to government enforcement action, class action litigation or other litigation, damage to our reputation, civil and criminal liability, damages, fines and penalties, and increased cost of regulatory compliance, any of which could adversely affect our results of operations and financial performance.

**Risks Related to Our Corporate Structure and Stock**

**Our stock price has been and may continue to be extremely volatile due to many factors.**

The market price of our common stock has fluctuated in the past and may increase or decrease rapidly in the future depending on news announcements and changes in general market conditions. The following factors, among others, may cause significant fluctuations in our stock price:

- overall changes in the economy and general market volatility;
- news announcements regarding our quarterly or annual results of operations;
- quarterly comparable sales;
- acquisitions;
- competitive developments;
- litigation affecting us; or
- market views as to the prospects of the retail industry generally.

**Rights of our stockholders may be negatively affected if we issue any of the shares of preferred stock which our Board of Directors has authorized for issuance.**

We have available for issuance up to 1,000,000 shares of preferred stock, par value \$0.01 per share. Our Board of Directors is authorized to issue any or all of these shares of preferred stock, in one or more series, without any further action on the part of stockholders. The rights of our stockholders may be negatively affected if we issue a series of preferred stock in the future that has preference over our common stock with respect to the payment of dividends or distribution upon our liquidation, dissolution or winding up.

In addition, the issuance of preferred stock by our Board of Directors pursuant to our certificate of incorporation, as amended, could have the effect of making it more difficult for a third party to acquire, or of discouraging a third party from acquiring, a majority of the outstanding voting stock of our Company.

**Our certificate of incorporation, as amended, limits transfers of our common stock and may, along with state law, inhibit potential acquisition bids that could be beneficial to our stockholders.**

Our certificate of incorporation, as amended, contains provisions that restrict any person or entity from attempting to transfer our stock, without prior permission from the Board of Directors, to the extent that such transfer would (i) create or result in an individual or entity becoming a five-percent shareholder of our stock, or (ii) increase the stock ownership percentage of any existing five-percent shareholder. These provisions provide that any transfer that violates such provisions shall be null and void and would require the purported transferee to, upon demand by us, transfer the shares that exceed the five percent limit to an agent designated by us for the purpose of conducting a sale of such excess shares. These provisions would make the acquisition of our Company more expensive to the acquirer and could significantly delay, discourage, or prevent third parties from acquiring our Company without the approval of our Board of Directors.

In addition, we are subject to certain provisions of Delaware law, which could also delay or make more difficult a merger, tender offer or proxy contest involving us. In particular, Section 203 of the Delaware General Corporation Law prohibits a Delaware corporation from engaging in certain business combinations with any interested stockholder for a period of three years unless specific conditions are met. In addition, certain provisions of Delaware law could have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in control of us, including, without limitation, discouraging a proxy contest or making more difficult the acquisition of a substantial block of our common stock. The provisions could also limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for shares of our common stock.

**Item 1B. Unresolved Staff Comments**

None.

**Item 2. Properties**

Our corporate offices and retail distribution center are located at 555 Turnpike Street in Canton, Massachusetts. The property consists of a 755,992 gross square foot building located on approximately 27.3 acres. We owned the property until January 30, 2006, at which time we entered into a sale-leaseback transaction with Spirit Finance Corporation, a third-party real estate investment trust (“Spirit”), whereby we entered into a twenty-year lease agreement with a wholly-owned subsidiary of Spirit for an initial annual rent payment of \$4.6 million, with periodic increases every fifth anniversary of the lease. In fiscal 2006, we realized a gain of approximately \$29.3 million on the sale of this property, which was deferred and is being amortized over the initial 20 years of the related lease agreement. Accordingly, our current annual rent expense of \$5.2 million is offset by \$1.5 million related to the amortization of this deferred gain.

As of February 3, 2018, we operated 212 Destination XL retail stores, 14 Destination XL outlet stores, 78 Casual Male XL retail stores, 33 Casual Male XL outlet stores and 5 Rochester Clothing stores. All of these stores are leased by us directly from owners of several different types of centers, including life-style centers, shopping centers, free standing buildings, outlet centers and downtown locations. The store leases are generally 5 to 10 years in length and contain renewal options extending their terms by between 5 and 10 years. Following this discussion is a listing by state of all store locations open at February 3, 2018.

Sites for new stores are selected on the basis of several factors, including the demographic profile of the area in which the site is located, the types of stores and other retailers in the area, the location of the store within the center and the attractiveness of the store layout. We also utilize financial models to project the profitability of each location using assumptions such as the center’s sales per square foot averages, estimated occupancy costs and return on investment requirements.

See also “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operation—Liquidity and Capital Resources—Capital Expenditures.”

**Store count by state at February 3, 2018**

<b><u>United States</u></b>	<b><u>DXL retail and DXL outlets</u></b>	<b><u>Casual Male XL and Rochester Clothing stores</u></b>
Alabama	2	2
Arizona	5	1
Arkansas	—	2
California	25	12
Colorado	3	2
Connecticut	4	2
Delaware	2	—
District of Columbia	—	1
Florida	11	10
Georgia	3	4
Idaho	1	—
Illinois	12	4
Indiana	6	3
Iowa	2	2
Kansas	3	—
Kentucky	3	—
Louisiana	3	1
Maine	2	—
Maryland	5	5
Massachusetts	5	2
Michigan	13	2
Minnesota	2	2
Mississippi	—	2
Missouri	4	5
Montana	1	—
Nebraska	2	—
Nevada	3	—
New Hampshire	3	—
New Jersey	7	7
New Mexico	1	—
New York	14	9
North Carolina	4	4
North Dakota	—	1
Ohio	8	3
Oklahoma	2	—
Oregon	2	1
Pennsylvania	9	13
Rhode Island	1	—
South Carolina	4	—
South Dakota	1	—
Tennessee	7	1
Texas	22	6
Utah	2	—
Vermont	1	—
Virginia	5	3
Washington	4	1
West Virginia	—	1
Wisconsin	5	1
<b><u>International</u></b>		
Toronto, Canada	2	—
London, England	—	1

**Item 3. Legal Proceedings**

From time to time, we are subject to various legal proceedings and claims that arise in the ordinary course of business. Management believes that the resolution of these matters will not have a material adverse impact on our future results of operations or financial position.

**Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosure**

Not applicable.

## PART II.

### Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Stockholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

#### Market Information

Our common stock is listed for trading on the NASDAQ Global Select Market under the symbol "DXLG".

The following table sets forth, for the periods indicated, the high and low per share sales prices for the common stock, as reported on Nasdaq.

	High	Low
<u>Fiscal Year Ended February 3, 2018</u>		
First Quarter	\$ 3.70	\$ 2.10
Second Quarter	2.75	1.70
Third Quarter	2.15	1.46
Fourth Quarter	2.70	1.80
<u>Fiscal Year Ended January 28, 2017</u>		
First Quarter	\$ 5.88	\$ 3.95
Second Quarter	5.54	4.05
Third Quarter	5.57	3.95
Fourth Quarter	5.00	3.15

#### Holdings

As of March 16, 2018, based upon data provided by the transfer agent for our common stock, there were approximately 87 holders of record of our common stock. The number of holders does not include individuals or entities who beneficially own shares but whose shares are held of record by a broker or clearing agent.

#### Dividends

We have not paid and do not anticipate paying cash dividends on our common stock. In addition, financial covenants in our loan agreement may restrict dividend payments. For a description of these financial covenants see Note C to the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

#### Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

On March 17, 2017, the Company's Board of Directors approved a stock repurchase plan. Under the stock repurchase plan, the Company could purchase up to \$12.0 million of its common stock through open market and privately negotiated transactions during fiscal 2017. Through February 3, 2018, the Company purchased 1,878,434 shares of common stock at an average price of \$2.49 per share. There were no stock repurchases during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017 and the Board-approved stock repurchase plan expired at the end of the fiscal year on February 3, 2018.

## Stock Performance Graph

The following Performance Graph compares our cumulative stockholder return with a broad market index (Standard & Poor's 500) and one published industry index (Dow Jones U.S. Apparel Retailers) for each of the most recent five years ended January 31. The cumulative stockholder return for shares of our common stock ("DXLG") and each of the indices is calculated assuming that \$100 was invested on January 31, 2013. We paid no cash dividends during the periods shown. The performance of the indices is shown on a total return (dividends reinvested) basis. The graph lines merely connect January 31 of each year and do not reflect fluctuations between those dates. In addition, we have included a chart of the annual percentage return of our common stock, the S&P 500 and the Dow Jones U.S. Apparel Retailers.



## Annual Return Percentage

Company/Index	Year ended				
	Jan 14	Jan 15	Jan 16	Jan 17	Jan 18
DXLG	17.0%	(5.6%)	(15.4%)	(23.3%)	(21.8%)
S&P 500	19.0%	11.9%	(2.7%)	18.3%	20.4%
Dow Jones U.S. Apparel Retailers	12.1%	19.3%	(2.9%)	(4.5%)	9.4%

## Indexed Returns

Company/Index	Base Period					
	Jan 13	Jan 14	Jan 15	Jan 16	Jan 17	Jan 18
DXLG	\$ 100	\$ 116.96	\$ 110.43	\$ 93.48	\$ 71.74	\$ 56.09
S&P 500	\$ 100	\$ 118.99	\$ 133.17	\$ 129.51	\$ 153.17	\$ 184.37
Dow Jones U.S. Apparel Retailers	\$ 100	\$ 112.12	\$ 133.75	\$ 129.93	\$ 124.06	\$ 135.74

The performance graph above shall not be deemed "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), or otherwise subject to the liability of that section. This graph will not be deemed incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Exchange Act, whether made before or after the date hereof, regardless of any general incorporation language in such filing.

## Item 6. Selected Financial Data

The following tables set forth selected consolidated financial data of our Company as of and for each of the years in the five-year period ended February 3, 2018 and should be read in conjunction with “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and our accompanying Consolidated Financial Statements and Notes thereto.

We derived the selected financial data presented below for the periods or dates indicated from our consolidated financial statements. Our consolidated financial statements as of and for the five-year period ended February 3, 2018 were audited by KPMG LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm. Our consolidated financial statements as of and for the years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016 are included in this Annual Report.

For a discussion of certain factors that materially affect the comparability of the selected consolidated financial data or cause the data reflected herein not to be indicative of our future results of operations or financial condition, see Item 1A, “Risk Factors” and Item 7, “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations.”

	Fiscal Years Ended (1)				
	February 3, 2018 (Fiscal 2017)	January 28, 2017 (Fiscal 2016)	January 30, 2016 (Fiscal 2015)	January 31, 2015 (Fiscal 2014)	February 1, 2014 (Fiscal 2013)
<i>(In millions, except per share and operating data)</i>					
<b>INCOME STATEMENT DATA:</b>					
Sales	\$ 468.0	\$ 450.3	\$ 442.2	\$ 414.0	\$ 386.5
Gross profit, net of occupancy costs	210.4	204.9	203.8	190.0	176.4
Selling, general and administrative expenses	193.2	173.3	180.6	174.8	169.1
Impairment of assets (2)	4.1	0.4	—	0.3	1.5
Depreciation and amortization	31.1	30.2	28.4	23.7	19.3
<b>Operating income (loss)</b>	<b>(18.0)</b>	<b>1.0</b>	<b>(5.1)</b>	<b>(8.8)</b>	<b>(13.5)</b>
Provision (benefit) for income taxes	(2.6) (5)	0.2	0.3	0.2	45.7 (5)
Loss from continuing operations	\$ (18.8)	\$ (2.3)	\$ (8.4)	\$ (11.2)	\$ (60.3)
Income (loss) from discontinued operations	—	—	—	(1.1)	0.5
<b>Net income (loss)</b>	<b>\$ (18.8)</b>	<b>\$ (2.3)</b>	<b>\$ (8.4)</b>	<b>\$ (12.3)</b>	<b>\$ (59.8)</b>
Income (loss) from continuing operations per share - diluted	\$ (0.39)	\$ (0.05)	\$ (0.17)	\$ (0.23)	\$ (1.24)
<b>Net income (loss) per share - diluted</b>	<b>\$ (0.39)</b>	<b>\$ (0.05)</b>	<b>\$ (0.17)</b>	<b>\$ (0.25)</b>	<b>\$ (1.23)</b>
<b>BALANCE SHEET DATA:</b>					
Working capital(3)	\$ 11.9	\$ 23.3	\$ 28.1	\$ 42.8	\$ 50.6
Inventories	103.3	117.4	125.0	115.2	105.6
Property and equipment, net	111.0	124.3	125.0	120.3	102.9
Total assets(3)	240.4	269.3	274.3	259.9	236.7
Long term debt, net of current portion(3)	10.7	12.1	19.0	26.2	12.0
Stockholders’ equity	70.0	88.5	88.4	92.4	105.0
<b>OTHER DATA:</b>					
Cash flow provided by operating activities	\$ 31.0	\$ 35.0	\$ 18.4	\$ 13.8	\$ 24.9
less: capital expenditures, infrastructure projects	(9.7)	(9.6)	(13.3)	(10.5)	(10.0)
less: capital expenditures for DXL stores	(12.9)	(19.6)	(20.1)	(30.4)	(44.1)
<b>Free cash flow (Non-GAAP measure)(4)</b>	<b>\$ 8.4</b>	<b>\$ 5.8</b>	<b>\$ (15.0)</b>	<b>\$ (27.1)</b>	<b>\$ (29.2)</b>
<b>OPERATING DATA:</b>					
Comparable sales percentage	0.9%	0.6%	4.8%	6.4%	3.0%
Gross profit margins	45.0%	45.5%	46.1%	45.9%	45.6%
EBITDA (Non-GAAP measure)(4)	\$ 13.0	\$ 31.2	\$ 23.3	\$ 14.9	\$ 5.8
EBITDA, adjusted for impairment of assets ("Adjusted EBITDA") (Non-GAAP measure)(4)	\$ 17.1	\$ 31.6	\$ 23.3	\$ 15.2	\$ 7.3
Adjusted EBITDA margin (Non-GAAP measure) (4)	3.7%	7.0%	5.3%	3.7%	1.9%
Operating margin	(3.9%)	0.2%	(1.2%)	(2.1%)	(3.5%)
Number of stores open at fiscal year end	342	343	345	353	359

- (1) Our fiscal year is a 52- or 53- week period ending on the Saturday closest to January 31. Fiscal 2017 was a 53-week period, all other fiscal years were 52-weeks. Certain columns may not foot due to rounding.
- (2) The impairment charges relate to the write-down of property and equipment, related to stores where the carrying value exceeds fair value. Fiscal 2017 also includes the write-off of \$1.9 million for technology projects which were abandoned in fiscal 2017. See Note A to the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements.
- (3) In fiscal 2015, we elected early adoption of ASU 2015-03, “Interest-Imputation of Interest (Subtopic 835-30), Simplifying the Presentation of Debt Issuance Costs.” The guidance simplifies the presentation of debt issuance costs to be presented as a deduction from the corresponding liability. Accordingly, selected balance sheet data for fiscal 2014 and fiscal 2013 have been adjusted to conform to the current presentation.
- (4) “EBITDA,” “Adjusted EBITDA,” “Adjusted EBITDA margin” and “Free cash flow” are non-GAAP measures. See “Non-GAAP Reconciliations” in Item 7. “Management’s Discussion and Analysis” for information on these non-GAAP measures and reconciliations to comparable GAAP measures, with the exception of Adjusted EBITDA margin, which is calculated by taking Adjusted EBITDA and dividing it by Sales.
- (5) In the fourth quarter of fiscal 2013, we recorded a non-cash charge of \$51.3 million to establish a full valuation allowance against our deferred tax assets. In the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017, as a result of the elimination of the corporate alternative minimum (“AMT”) tax and the ability to receive a refund for our AMT credit, we recognized an income tax benefit of \$2.1 million, associated with reversing the corresponding valuation allowance against this asset. See Note D to the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

## **Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations**

### **FORWARD LOOKING STATEMENTS**

As noted above in Part 1, this Annual Report, including, without limitation, this Item 7, contains "forward-looking statements," including forward-looking statements within the meaning of the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. Actual results or developments could differ materially from those projected in such statements as a result of numerous factors, including, without limitation those risks and uncertainties set forth in Item 1A, *Risk Factors*, which you are encouraged to read. The following discussion and analysis of our financial condition and results of operations should be read in light of those risks and uncertainties and in conjunction with our accompanying Consolidated Financial Statements and Notes thereto.

Certain figures discussed below may not foot due to rounding.

### **Segment Reporting**

We report our operations as one reportable segment, Big & Tall Men's Apparel. We consider our retail and direct businesses, especially in our growing omni-channel environment, to be similar in terms of economic characteristics, production processes and operations, and have therefore aggregated them into a single reporting segment.

### **Comparable Sales Definition**

The Company's 2017 fiscal year included 53 weeks compared with 52 weeks in fiscal 2016. Accordingly, year-over-year comparisons of total sales for the fourth quarter and full year are affected by an extra week of sales in fiscal 2017. However, for comparable sales, the Company is reporting on a comparable weeks basis (e.g. the 14 and 53 weeks ended February 3, 2018 compared with the 14 and 53 weeks ended February 4, 2017, respectively).

Total comparable sales include our retail stores that have been open for at least 13 months and our direct business. Stores that have been remodeled or re-located during the period are also included in our determination of comparable sales. Stores that have been expanded by more than 25% are considered non-comparable for the first 13 months. If a store becomes a clearance center, it is also removed from the calculation of comparable sales. The method of calculating comparable sales varies across the retail industry and, as a result, our calculation of comparable sales is not necessarily comparable to similarly titled measures reported by other retailers.

Our customer's shopping experience continues to evolve across multiple channels and we are continually changing to meet his needs. Since fiscal 2014 the majority of our retail stores have the capability of fulfilling online orders if merchandise is not available in the warehouse. As a result, we continue to see more transactions that begin online but are ultimately completed at the store level. Similarly, if a customer visits a store and the item is out of stock, the associate can order the item through our website. A customer also has the ability to order online and pick-up in a store. Because this omni-channel approach to retailing is changing the boundaries of where a sale originates and where a sale is ultimately settled, we do not report comparable sales separately for our retail and direct businesses. However, as we invest in building our e-commerce platform, bringing a heightened digital focus to our Company, additional disclosure on our e-commerce growth as it relates to our current initiatives is important. Beginning in the second quarter of fiscal 2017, we define store sales as sales that originate and are fulfilled directly at the store level. E-commerce sales are defined as sales that originate online, including those initiated online at the store level. This reclassification on how we define a store sale from an e-commerce sale had no effect on our previous disclosure of total Company comparable sales or how we report them.

### **Non-GAAP Measures**

We monitor certain non-GAAP financial measures on a regular basis in order to track the progress of our business. These measures include adjusted net loss, adjusted net loss per diluted share, free cash flow, EBITDA and adjusted EBITDA. We believe these measures provide helpful information with respect to the Company's operating performance and that the inclusion of these non-GAAP measures is important to assist investors in comparing our performance in fiscal 2017 to fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015. We also provide certain forward-looking information with respect to certain of these non-GAAP financial measures. However, these measures may not be comparable to similar measures used by other companies and should not be considered superior to or as a substitute for net loss, loss from continuing operations, net loss per diluted share or cash flows from operating activities in accordance with GAAP. See "Non-GAAP Reconciliations" below for additional information on these non-GAAP financial measures and reconciliations to comparable GAAP measures.

## EXECUTIVE OVERVIEW

<i>(in millions, except for per share data)</i>	Fiscal 2017	Fiscal 2016	Fiscal 2015
Net loss	\$ (18.8)	\$ (2.3)	\$ (8.4)
Adjusted net loss (1)	\$ (12.8)	\$ (1.3)	\$ (6.0)
<b>Diluted loss per share:</b>			
Net loss	\$ (0.39)	\$ (0.05)	\$ (0.17)
Adjusted net loss	\$ (0.26)	\$ (0.03)	\$ (0.12)
Impairment charges	\$ 4.1	\$ 0.4	\$ —
EBITDA	\$ 13.0	\$ 31.2	\$ 23.3
Adjusted EBITDA (1)	\$ 17.1	\$ 31.6	\$ 23.3
Cash flow from operating activities	\$ 31.0	\$ 35.0	\$ 18.4
Free cash flow	\$ 8.4	\$ 5.8	\$ (15.0)

(1) Adjusted net loss and adjusted EBITDA exclude impairment charges. Adjusted net loss, for all periods, assumes a normalized tax benefit of 26%. See “Non-GAAP Reconciliations” below.

In fiscal 2017, we focused on key initiatives aimed towards growing our digital presence and strengthening our brand awareness in an effort to drive traffic to both our stores and website. We incurred a significant increase in marketing spend, which consisted of an integrated social, digital and media marketing campaign as well as enhancements to our website to fuel these initiatives.

Our comparable sales through the first three quarters of fiscal 2017 were down (0.5%) to the prior year. In the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017, we started to see an improvement in store traffic that resulted in a fourth quarter comparable sales increase of 4.3%, resulting in a full year comparable increase of 0.9%. Our sales productivity metrics were consistent throughout fiscal 2017, with dollars per transactions, units per transaction and conversion rates all up over fiscal 2016.

Our Holiday campaign showcased several celebrities with his own sense of #XLstyle. Our brand awareness, which was 34% at the end of fiscal 2016, and 38% before the Holiday campaign, increased to an all-time high of 42% after the campaign. While we were pleased with this increase in awareness, the campaign did not drive store traffic to the extent we expected. While the campaign drove significant traffic to our website, conversion was down. As we head into fiscal 2018, we plan to tailor our 2018 marketing initiatives to better connect with our customer on a more personal and emotional level, highlighting our stores, exclusive brands, fit and quality.

Sales from our direct business increased to 21.0% of our total sales in fiscal 2017 as compared to 19.9% in fiscal 2016. During fiscal 2017, we made a number of foundational changes to our website in an effort to streamline and simplify the shopping experience for our customers. We are also taking a “mobile-first” mindset with respect to how we engage with our customers as the retail industry as a whole is seeing an increase in mobile engagement. Beyond our own e-commerce site, we are also growing our business with third-party marketplaces, working with companies such as Amazon to broaden our brand reach. We have been pleased with the progress we have seen and expect this will continue to be an area of growth as we head into fiscal 2018.

For fiscal 2017, we had a net loss of \$(18.8) million, or \$(0.39) per diluted share, compared with a net loss of \$(2.3) million, or \$(0.05) per diluted share in fiscal 2016. The decrease of \$(0.34) per diluted share, was primarily due to an increase of \$11.3 million, or \$(0.23) per diluted share, in marketing and \$3.7 million, or \$(0.08) per diluted share of impairment charges. Similarly, adjusted EBITDA decreased \$14.5 million to \$17.1 million, compared to \$31.6 million in fiscal 2016, primarily due to the increase in marketing costs of \$11.3 million.

We continued to make significant improvements in our inventory optimization project which resulted in inventory levels decreasing by \$14.1 million at February 3, 2018 as compared January 28, 2017. We are improving inventory receipt flow and procurement, tightening controls over the number of weeks of supply and refining our in-stock positions by sku level.

Capital expenditures decreased slightly in fiscal 2017 compared to fiscal 2016 due to fewer store openings, at a lower average square footage. During fiscal 2017, we opened 20 DXL retail stores and 1 DXL outlet stores. In addition, we closed 19 Casual Male XL retail stores and 3 Casual Male XL outlet stores.

In the first half of fiscal 2017, we repurchased approximately 1.9 million shares of our common stock at a total cost of approximately \$4.7 million. Our stock repurchase plan, discussed more fully below under “Liquidity and Capital Resources,” ended on February 3, 2018. After accounting for our increased investment in marketing, repurchases under our stock repurchase program, inventory efficiency savings, and the reduction in capital expenditures, we were able to generate \$8.4 million of free cash flow compared to \$5.8 million at the end of fiscal 2016. The net cash flow enabled us to reduce our total debt by \$3.7 million as compared to the prior year.

### **Subsequent Event**

Subsequent to the end of fiscal 2017, on March 23, 2018, the Company announced that David Levin, President and Chief Executive Officer, plans to retire as President and CEO and director of the Company by the end of 2018. The Company’s board of directors has initiated a search process to identify a successor for Mr. Levin, which is expected to be completed by the end of 2018. The search will include a review of both internal and external candidates. Mr. Levin is also prepared to provide transition support and assist on requested projects following his retirement as CEO. The Company and Mr. Levin have entered into a Transition Agreement dated as of March 20, 2018. See Note K, Subsequent Event, to the Company’s Consolidated Financial Statements for additional disclosure.

### **Fiscal 2018 Outlook**

Our strategy for fiscal 2018 remains focused on customer acquisition, customer retention, and customer re-activation. We intend to launch a new creative advertising campaign with two flights of television: 6 weeks in Spring, and 5 weeks in Fall. Our marketing spend for the year is expected to be approximately \$24.0 million which is less than fiscal 2017 spend of approximately \$29.5 million, but greater than fiscal 2016 spend of \$18.0 million. Compared to fiscal 2017, we are projecting that our total sales for the year will be negatively impacted by one less week of sales and a net decrease in store count of nine stores, worth approximately \$5.3 million in sales. Fiscal 2017 included a 53<sup>rd</sup> week, with sales of \$6.9 million and operating income of \$1.6 million.

We expect to open 3 new DXL stores in fiscal 2018 and plan to remodel 2 Casual Male stores which will be re-branded as DXL.

For fiscal 2018, our outlook, based on a 52-week year and without consideration of additional costs that may be incurred in connection with Mr. Levin’s retirement and the successor CEO transition, is as follows:

- Sales are expected to range from \$462.0 million to \$472.0 million, with a total company comparable sales increase of approximately 1.0% to 3.0%.
- Gross margin rate of approximately 45.0%.
- Net loss, on a GAAP basis, of \$(8.3) to \$(14.3) million, or \$(0.17) to \$(0.29) per diluted share.
- EBITDA of \$18.0 to \$24.0 million.
- Adjusted net loss of \$(0.12) to \$(0.22) per diluted share. Because we expect to continue providing a full valuation allowance against our deferred tax assets, we do not expect to recognize any income tax benefit in fiscal 2018. This non-GAAP net loss was calculated, assuming a tax benefit of 26%, by taking the 2018 forecasted earnings of a net loss of \$(0.17) to \$(0.29) per diluted share and multiplying each by 26% to calculate an estimated income tax benefit of \$(0.05) to \$(0.07) per diluted share, resulting in an adjusted net loss of \$(0.12) to \$(0.22) per diluted share.
- Capital expenditures of approximately \$11.4 million, \$2.1 million of which will be for new and remodeled stores to the DXL format and \$9.3 million for digital and infrastructure projects, partially offset by approximately \$1.1 million in tenant allowances. We expect to fund our capital expenditures from our operating cash flow.
- At the end of fiscal 2018, we expect cash flow from operating activities of \$20.5 million to \$26.5 million (including tenant allowances), resulting in positive free cash flow of approximately \$9.1 million to \$15.1 million.

## **RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

Our fiscal year is a 52- or 53-week period ending on the Saturday closest to January 31. Fiscal 2017 was a 53-week year and fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015 were both 52-week periods.

### **SALES**

Sales for fiscal 2017 increased 3.9% to \$468.0 million as compared to \$450.3 million for fiscal 2016. The increase in sales is primarily due to sales from the 53<sup>rd</sup> week of \$6.9 million, DXL non-comparable sales, net of closed stores, of \$6.9 million and a comparable sales increase of \$3.7 million, or 0.9%. While store traffic was down for most of fiscal 2017, we did see increases in sales productivity with increases in average dollars per transactions, units per transaction and conversion. Sales from our direct businesses as a percentage of net sales were 21.0% in fiscal 2017 as compared to 19.9% in fiscal 2016. Our end-of-rack customer grew to 45.6% of our bottoms business in fiscal 2017 from 44.6% in fiscal 2016.

Sales for fiscal 2016 increased 1.8% to \$450.3 million as compared to \$442.2 million in fiscal 2015. The increase in sales was partly due to sales from DXL non-comparable store sales of \$30.5 million, offset partially by lost sales of \$25.4 million from closed and converted stores. In addition, comparable sales increased \$2.5 million, or 0.6%, compared to fiscal 2015. Included in the comparable sales increase of \$2.5 million, are the comparable sales from our 166 DXL retail stores, which increased 2.4%, or \$5.4 million in fiscal 2016 as compared to fiscal 2015. Store traffic was down across the retail industry in the latter half of fiscal 2016, which we believe was due in part to the macroeconomic and political issues the country was facing. In fiscal 2016, regionally, our stores in Coastal states performed better than our stores in Central states, whose comparable sales were, on average, 600 basis points less than our stores in Coastal states. In addition to the overall weakness in the retail industry, we also believe that our decision to eliminate our Fall marketing campaign, had a negative impact on sales and on building our customer base in fiscal 2016.

#### *GROSS MARGIN*

Gross margin rate for fiscal 2017 was 45.0% as compared to 45.5% in fiscal 2016 and 46.1% in fiscal 2015.

The gross margin of 45.0% for fiscal 2017 decreased 50 basis points from fiscal 2016. The decrease was due to a 50 basis point decrease in merchandise margin, related to our inventory initiatives and increased efforts to reduce slow-moving merchandise categories which resulted in higher promotional markdowns than the prior year. Our inventory initiatives have resulted in a 12% decrease in inventory levels from a year ago, improved inventory turnover and days on hand, while at the same time managing a strong merchandise margin. Occupancy costs, as a percent of sales, were flat. On a dollar basis, occupancy costs for fiscal 2017 increased approximately 4.0% over fiscal 2016, primarily as a result of an increase of 2.2% in total square footage and the increased percentage of DXL stores to our total store base.

The gross margin decrease of 60 basis points for fiscal 2016 as compared to fiscal 2015 was driven by a decrease of 40 basis points in merchandise margin and a 20 basis point increase in occupancy costs as a percentage of sales. The decrease in our merchandise margin of 40 basis points was mainly due to higher markdown activity associated with increased promotional activities. The increase in occupancy costs was due to occupancy expense increasing at a greater rate than sales.

#### *SELLING, GENERAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES*

SG&A expenses as a percentage of sales for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015 were 41.3%, 38.5% and 40.8%, respectively.

SG&A expense for fiscal 2017 increased \$19.9 million, or 11.5%, to \$193.2 million as compared to \$173.3 million in fiscal 2016. The increase was principally due to an increase of \$11.3 million in advertising expense. As discussed above, we increased our investment in our marketing initiatives in fiscal 2017 to help drive brand awareness, store traffic and our digital presence. The remainder of the increase was due to increases in store payroll and other supporting costs associated with a greater DXL store base and e-commerce initiatives and expenses for the additional 53rd week of approximately \$2.5 million.

SG&A expenses for fiscal 2016 decreased \$7.3 million, or 4.0%, to \$173.3 million as compared to \$180.6 million in fiscal 2015. This decrease was primarily due to a decrease in advertising expense of approximately \$5.4 million as well as a reduction in incentive accruals, including stock compensation, of approximately \$5.4 million. These decreases were partially offset by increases in store payroll of \$1.1 million, associated with the higher sales base, healthcare costs of approximately \$1.4 million and other corporate and supporting costs of \$1.0 million.

#### *IMPAIRMENT OF ASSETS*

For fiscal 2017, we recorded impairment charges of \$4.1 million, which consisted of \$2.2 million for the impairment of long-lived assets related to stores where the carrying value exceeded fair value, and \$1.9 million for the write-off of certain costs associated with technology projects which were abandoned, due to a shift in strategy, in fiscal 2017. For fiscal 2016, impairment charges of \$0.4 million related to impairment of long-lived assets, related to stores. There were no impairment charges in fiscal 2015.

For comparability, impairment charges in fiscal 2016 of \$0.4 million were reclassified from “Depreciation and amortization” to “Impairment of assets” on the Consolidated Statement of Operations.

#### *DEPRECIATION AND AMORTIZATION*

Depreciation and amortization expense was \$31.1 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$30.2 million for fiscal 2016 and \$28.4 million for fiscal 2015. The year-over-year increases in depreciation and amortization expense for both fiscal 2017 and fiscal 2016 were primarily related to the opening of 21 DXL retail and outlet stores in fiscal 2017 and 30 stores in fiscal 2016. With our new store growth complete, we expect that our depreciation levels will begin to decrease beginning in fiscal 2018.

Included in depreciation and amortization is the amortization of our “Casual Male” trademark of \$0.3 million, \$0.3 million and \$0.5 million for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

#### *INTEREST EXPENSE, NET*

Net interest expense for fiscal 2017 was \$3.4 million as compared to \$3.1 million for fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015. Although total debt at February 3, 2018 decreased \$3.7 million from January 28, 2017, our average borrowings under our revolver during fiscal 2017 were approximately \$7.6 million higher than fiscal 2016. In addition, our average interest rate increased from 4.4% in fiscal 2016 to 4.7% in fiscal 2017.

See “Liquidity and Capital Resources” below for more discussion regarding our credit facility, equipment financings and term loan as well as our future liquidity needs.

#### *INCOME TAXES*

Pursuant to accounting rules, realization of our deferred tax assets, which relate principally to federal net operating loss carryforwards expiring from 2022 through 2036, is dependent on generating sufficient taxable income in the near term.

At the end of fiscal 2013, we entered a three-year cumulative loss and based on all positive and negative evidence at February 1, 2014, we established a full valuation allowance against our net deferred tax assets. While we expect to return to profitability, generate taxable income and ultimately emerge from a three-year cumulative loss, based on our results for fiscal 2017 and our forecast for fiscal 2018, we believe that a full valuation allowance remains appropriate at this time.

In December 2017, the U.S. Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (the “2017 Tax Act”) was enacted. Because we have a full valuation allowance against our deferred tax assets at February 3, 2018, there was limited impact to our consolidated financial results. The rate change impact on deferred tax assets as of February 3, 2018, due to the 2017 Tax Act, was \$22.8 million and was fully offset by a corresponding decrease in our full valuation allowance against those deferred tax assets. The 2017 Tax Act also repealed the corporate alternative minimum tax (“AMT”) and any AMT carryforward credit became refundable over a five year period. As a result, we have reclassified our AMT credit of approximately \$2.1 million from deferred tax assets to a non-current receivable account and have reversed the corresponding valuation allowance, resulting in an income tax benefit for fiscal 2017.

Our tax provisions for fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015 were primarily attributable to current state margin tax and foreign income tax.

#### *NET LOSS*

The net loss for fiscal 2017 was \$(18.8) million, or \$(0.39) per diluted share, as compared to \$(2.3) million, or \$(0.05) per diluted share, in fiscal 2016 and a net loss of \$(8.4) million, or \$(0.17) per diluted share, in fiscal 2015.

Results for fiscal 2017 as compared to fiscal 2016, included an increase in impairment charges of \$3.7 million, or \$0.08 per diluted share, and increased advertising costs of \$11.3 million, or \$0.23 per diluted share. These additional costs were partially offset by the 53<sup>rd</sup> week which added approximately \$1.6 million in operating income.

On a non-GAAP basis, before impairments and assuming a normalized tax rate of 26% for all periods, adjusted net loss per share for fiscal 2017 was \$(0.26) per diluted share, compared to \$(0.03) per diluted share for fiscal 2016 and \$(0.12) per diluted share in fiscal 2015. See “Non-GAAP Reconciliation” below.

## SEASONALITY

A comparison of sales in each quarter of the past three fiscal years is presented below. The amounts shown are not necessarily indicative of actual trends, because such amounts also reflect the addition of new stores and the remodeling and closing of other stores during these periods. Consistent with the retail apparel industry, our business is seasonal. Generally, the majority of our operating income is generated in the fourth quarter as a result of the impact of the holiday selling season. A comparison of quarterly sales, gross profit, and net income per share for the past two fiscal years is presented in Note J of the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

<i>(in millions, except percentages)</i>	Fiscal 2017		Fiscal 2016		Fiscal 2015	
First quarter	\$ 107.6	23.0%	\$ 107.9	24.0%	\$ 104.4	23.6%
Second quarter	121.1	25.9%	117.9	26.2%	114.2	25.8%
Third quarter	103.7	22.1%	101.9	22.6%	99.6	22.5%
Fourth quarter	135.6	29.0%	122.6	27.2%	124.0	28.1%
	\$ 468.0	100.0%	\$ 450.3	100.0%	\$ 442.2	100.0%

## EFFECTS OF INFLATION

Although our operations are influenced by general economic trends, we do not believe that inflation has had a material effect on the results of our operations in the last three fiscal years.

## LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

Our primary sources of liquidity are cash generated from operations and availability under our credit facility with Bank of America, N.A., which was most recently amended in October 2014 (“Credit Facility”). Our current cash needs are primarily for working capital (essentially inventory requirements), capital expenditures and growth initiatives. Our fiscal 2017 stock repurchase program, which is discussed below, expired at the end of the fiscal year. We plan to manage our working capital and it is expected that excess cash from operations will be directed toward our growth initiatives and debt reductions to ensure availability given our inventory reduction initiatives, with consideration of further share repurchases, if excess availability beyond our operating needs exists.

For fiscal 2017, cash flow from operating activities decreased by \$4.0 million primarily as a result of the operating loss, partially offset by inventory initiatives which have improved timing of receipts and reduced weeks of supply on hand. Capital expenditures decreased \$6.7 million as a result of fewer store openings in fiscal 2017, resulting in an improvement in free cash flow of \$2.6 million to \$8.4 million from \$5.8 million for fiscal 2016. This free cash flow, together with borrowings under our credit facility, was used to pay down \$7.1 million on our long-term debt and repurchase stock. In total, debt outstanding at February 3, 2018 decreased \$3.7 million from January 28, 2017.

Despite the reduction in total debt, our borrowing base under our credit facility at the end of fiscal 2017 was approximately \$15.2 million lower than at the end of fiscal 2016. Because our availability is inventory-based, the decrease was directly attributable to our inventory reduction initiatives, which decreased inventory levels by approximately \$14.1 million during fiscal 2017. The remaining decrease of \$1.1 million was due to a higher level of outstanding letters of credit. Our advance rate improved slightly, which is an indication of the quality of our inventory. We believe that this availability, in addition to cash generated from operations, will be sufficient to meet our working capital needs during fiscal 2018. By the end of fiscal 2018, we expect to generate free cash flow of \$9.1 million to \$15.1 million, resulting in a corresponding expected decrease in total debt of approximately \$9.1 million to \$15.1 million.

With our store footprint essentially complete, we expect our capital expenditures will decrease considerably in fiscal 2018 to approximately \$11.4 million, a decrease from \$22.6 million in fiscal 2017 and \$29.2 million in fiscal 2016. See “Capital Expenditures” below.

The following table sets forth financial data regarding our liquidity position at the end of the past three fiscal years:

<i>(in millions, except ratios)</i>	Fiscal 2017	Fiscal 2016	Fiscal 2015
Cash provided by operations	\$ 31.0	\$ 35.0	\$ 18.4
Total debt, net of unamortized debt issuance costs	\$ 59.4	\$ 63.1	\$ 68.1
Unused excess availability under Credit Facility	\$ 37.5	\$ 57.0	\$ 66.0
Working capital	\$ 11.9	\$ 23.3	\$ 28.1
Current ratio	1.1:1	1.2:1	1.2:1

The following is a summary of our total debt outstanding at February 3, 2018, with the associated unamortized debt issuance costs:

<i>(in thousands)</i>	Gross Debt Outstanding	Less Debt Issuance Costs	Net Debt Outstanding
Credit facility	\$ 47,601	\$ (216)	\$ 47,385
Equipment financing notes	501	(1)	500
Term loan, due 2019	11,750	(189)	11,561
Total debt	\$ 59,852	\$ (406)	\$ 59,446

#### **Credit Facility**

Our Credit Facility with Bank of America, N.A. provides for a maximum committed borrowing of \$125.0 million, which, pursuant to an accordion feature, may be increased to \$175.0 million upon our request and the agreement of the lender(s) participating in the increase. The Credit Facility includes a sublimit of \$20.0 million for commercial and standby letters of credit and a sublimit of up to \$15.0 million for swingline loans. The maturity date of the Credit Facility is October 29, 2019. Our Credit Facility is described in more detail in Note C to the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

Borrowings made pursuant to the Credit Facility bear interest at a rate equal to the base rate (determined as the highest of (a) Bank of America N.A.'s prime rate, (b) the Federal Funds rate plus 0.50% and (c) the annual ICE-LIBOR ("LIBOR") rate for the respective interest period) plus a varying percentage, based on our borrowing base, of 0.50%-0.75% for prime-based borrowings and 1.50%-1.75% for LIBOR-based borrowings.

We had outstanding borrowings of \$47.6 million under the Credit Facility at February 3, 2018. Outstanding standby letters of credit were \$3.3 million and outstanding documentary letters of credit were \$1.3 million. The average monthly borrowing outstanding under the Credit Facility during fiscal 2017 was approximately \$59.7 million, resulting in an average unused excess availability of approximately \$42.5 million. Unused excess availability at February 3, 2018 was \$37.5 million. Our obligations under the Credit Facility are secured by a lien on substantially all of our assets, excluding (i) a first priority lien held by the lenders of the Term Loan Facility described below on certain equipment of the Company and (ii) intellectual property.

#### **Equipment Financing Notes**

We have entered into twelve Equipment Security Notes (the "Notes"), whereby we borrowed an aggregate of \$26.4 million. The Notes, which were issued between September 2013 and June 2014, were issued pursuant to a Master Loan and Security Agreement with Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC, dated July 20, 2007 and most recently amended September 30, 2013. The Notes are secured by a security interest in all of our rights, title and interest in and to certain equipment. The Notes are for 48 months and accrue interest at fixed rates ranging from 3.07% to 3.50%. Principal and interest, in arrears, are payable monthly. We are no longer subject to any prepayment penalties. The Notes are secured by a security interest in all of the Company's rights, title and interest in and to certain equipment.

#### **Term Loan, Due 2019**

We have a \$15.0 million senior secured term loan facility with Wells Fargo Bank, National Association as administrative and collateral agent (the "Term Loan Facility"). The Term Loan Facility bears interest at a rate per annum equal to the greater of (a) 1.00% and (b) the one month LIBOR rate, plus 6.50%. Interest payments are payable on the first business day of each calendar month, and increase by 2% following the occurrence and during the continuance of an "event of default," as defined in the Term Loan Facility. The Term Loan Facility, which matures October 29, 2019, provides for quarterly principal payments on the first business day of each calendar quarter, which commenced the first business day of January 2015, in an aggregate principal amount equal to \$250,000, subject to adjustment, with the balance payable on the termination date.

The Term Loan Facility includes usual and customary mandatory prepayment provisions for transactions of this type that are triggered by the occurrence of certain events. We are no longer subject to any prepayment penalties.

The Term Loan Facility is secured by a first priority lien on certain of our equipment, and a second priority lien on substantially all of our remaining assets, excluding intellectual property.

### ***Stock Repurchase Program***

On March 17, 2017, our Board of Directors approved a stock repurchase plan. Under the stock repurchase plan, we could purchase up to \$12.0 million of our common stock through open market and privately negotiated transactions during fiscal 2017. The timing and the amount of any repurchases of common stock was determined based on the Company's evaluation of market conditions and other factors. The stock repurchase program commenced in the first quarter of fiscal 2017 and expired on February 3, 2018. We financed the repurchases from operating funds.

During fiscal 2017, the Company purchased 1,878,434 shares of common stock at an average price of \$2.49 per share. There were no stock repurchases during the third and fourth quarters of fiscal 2017. The repurchased common stock is held as treasury stock.

### ***INVENTORY***

At February 3, 2018, total inventories decreased to \$103.3 million from \$117.4 million at January 28, 2017. The \$14.1 million decrease in inventory is directly attributable to our continued inventory initiatives implemented in fiscal 2016 to improve timing of receipts and reduce weeks of supply on hand. As a result of these initiatives, the average inventory per total built-out square footage of stores has decreased 13.9% to \$47.86 at February 3, 2018 from \$55.60 per square foot at January 28, 2017 and \$61.46 per square foot at January 30, 2016. At February 3, 2018, our clearance inventory represented 9.8% of our inventory, as compared to 7.9% at January 28, 2017. This increased percentage of clearance is primarily due to the lower inventory base as a result of the inventory productivity initiatives at fiscal 2017 as compared to fiscal 2016.

### ***OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS***

We have no off-balance sheet arrangements as defined by 303(a)(4) of Regulation S-K.

### ***CONTRACTUAL OBLIGATIONS***

The following table summarizes our contractual obligations at February 3, 2018, and the effect such obligations are expected to have on our liquidity and cash flows in future periods (Certain amounts in the following table do not foot due to rounding):

Contractual Obligations	Payments due by period				
	Total	Less than 1 year	1 to 3 years	3 to 5 years	More than 5 years
			(in millions)		
Operating leases (1)	\$ 343.0	\$ 58.6	\$ 103.4	\$ 91.0	\$ 90.0
Long-term debt obligations (2)	12.3	1.5	10.8	—	—
Interest on long-term debt obligations (3)	1.5	0.9	0.6	—	—
Merchandise purchase obligations (4)	31.5	11.5	20.0	—	—
Total Commitments (5)	<u>\$ 388.2</u>	<u>\$ 72.4</u>	<u>\$ 134.7</u>	<u>\$ 91.0</u>	<u>\$ 90.0</u>

- (1) Includes amounts due on our lease agreement for our corporate headquarters and distribution center and operating leases for all of our current store locations and certain equipment and auto leases.
- (2) At February 3, 2018, we had \$47.6 million outstanding under our credit facility, which is excluded from the above table.
- (3) Interest on long-term obligations is estimated using the current effective rate for each of the Equipment Financing Loans and Term Loan over the remaining term of the respective debt, taking into account scheduled repayments.
- (4) Merchandise Purchase Obligations include amounts for which we are contractually committed to meet certain minimum purchases. These commitments are contingent on the supplier meeting its obligations under the contract. Excluded from Merchandise Purchase Obligations in the table above are our outstanding obligations pursuant to open purchase orders. At February 3, 2018, we had approximately \$59.5 million in open purchase orders. We estimate that approximately 95% of these purchase orders may be considered non-cancelable.
- (5) At February 3, 2018, we had an unfunded Pension Obligation of \$3.4 million and obligations under our Supplemental Employee Retirement Plan of \$0.5 million, which are not included in the table because of uncertainty over whether or when further contributions will be required.

## CAPITAL EXPENDITURES

The following table sets forth the open stores and related square footage at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017 respectively:

Store Concept	At February 3, 2018		At January 28, 2017	
	Number of Stores	Square Footage	Number of Stores	Square Footage
<i>(square footage in thousands)</i>				
DXL Retail	212	1,665	192	1,542
DXL Outlet	14	72	13	66
Casual Male XL Retail	78	268	97	340
Casual Male XL Outlet	33	103	36	113
Rochester Clothing	5	51	5	51
Total Stores	342	2,159	343	2,112

Below is a summary of store openings and closings from January 28, 2017 to February 3, 2018:

Number of Stores:	DXL Retail	DXL Outlet	Casual Male XL Retail	Casual Male XL Outlet	Rochester Clothing	Total Stores
At January 28, 2017	192	13	97	36	5	343
New stores <sup>(1)</sup>	8					8
Replaced stores <sup>(2)</sup>	12	1	(14)	(3)		(4)
Closed retail stores <sup>(3)</sup>			(5)			(5)
At February 3, 2018	212	14	78	33	5	342

- (1) Represents stores opened in new markets, including two stores located in Toronto, Canada.
- (2) Represents the total number of DXL stores opened in existing markets with the corresponding total number of Casual Male XL stores and/or Rochester Clothing stores closed in such markets in connection with those DXL store openings.
- (3) Represents closed stores for which there were no corresponding openings of a DXL store in the same market.

Our capital expenditures for fiscal 2017 were \$22.6 million, as compared to \$29.2 million in fiscal 2016 and \$33.4 million in fiscal 2015. Approximately \$12.9 million related to the opening of 20 DXL stores and 1 DXL outlet. In addition, we spent approximately \$6.9 million in management information projects, which included continued enhancements for our e-commerce sites and upgrades to our merchandise planning systems, with the remaining \$2.8 million for general capital projects in our distribution center and corporate offices.

For fiscal 2018, our capital expenditures are expected to be approximately \$11.4 million and we expect to receive approximately \$1.1 million in tenant allowances to offset these expenditures. Our budget includes approximately \$2.1 million, excluding any allowance, related to the opening of 2 new DXL retail stores, the remodeling of 2 Casual Male XL to DXL retail stores and 1 DXL outlet store, and approximately \$9.3 million for continued information technology projects and general overhead projects. In addition, we expect to close 7 Casual Male XL retail stores, 4 Casual Male XL outlet stores (two of which will close in connection with the opening of two DXL stores) and 1 DXL retail store.

### Non-GAAP Reconciliations

We monitor certain non-GAAP financial measures on a regular basis in order to track the progress of our business, including the measures below. We believe these measures provide helpful information with respect to the Company's operating performance to shareholders, investors and analysts, and that the inclusion of these non-GAAP measures is important to assist investors in comparing our performance in fiscal 2017 to fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, on a comparable basis. However, these measures may not be comparable to similar measures used by other companies and should not be considered superior to or as a substitute for operating net loss, loss from continuing operations, net loss per diluted share or cash flows from operating activities in accordance with GAAP.

### Adjusted Net Loss and Adjusted Net Loss Per Diluted Share

Adjusted loss from continuing operations and adjusted net loss reflect an adjustment assuming a normal tax rate of 26% and the add back of impairment charges. We have fully reserved against our deferred tax assets and, therefore, net loss is not reflective of earnings assuming a "normal" tax position. Adjusted net loss provides investors with a useful indication of the financial performance of the business, on a comparative basis, assuming a normalized tax rate of 26%. As discussed above, as a result of the 2017 Tax Act the federal income rate was reduced from 35% to 21%, therefore, we are using an estimated normal tax rate of 26%, which includes a blended state income tax rate.

The following table is a reconciliation of net loss and net loss per diluted share (on a GAAP basis) to adjusted net loss and adjusted net loss per diluted share (on a non-GAAP basis) (certain amounts may not foot due to rounding):

	Fiscal 2017		Fiscal 2016		Fiscal 2015	
	\$	Per diluted share	\$	Per diluted share	\$	Per diluted share
<i>(in thousands, except per share data)</i>						
Loss before tax provision, on a GAAP basis	\$ (21,398)	\$ (0.44)	\$ (2,090)	\$ (0.04)	\$ (8,148)	\$ (0.17)
Provision (benefit) for income taxes	\$ (2,572)	\$ (0.05)	\$ 166	\$ 0.00	\$ 260	\$ 0.01
Net loss, on a GAAP basis	\$ (18,826)	\$ (0.39)	\$ (2,256)	\$ (0.05)	\$ (8,408)	\$ (0.17)
<b>Add back:</b>						
Impairment of assets	\$ 4,095	\$ 0.08	\$ 376	\$ 0.01	—	—
Actual provision (benefit) for income taxes	\$ (2,572)	\$ (0.05)	\$ 166	\$ 0.00	\$ 260	\$ 0.01
Adjusted loss before income taxes	\$ (17,303)	\$ (0.35)	\$ (1,714)	\$ (0.03)	\$ (8,148)	\$ (0.17)
Income tax benefit, assuming a normalized tax rate of 26%, with no AMT Benefit in 2017	\$ (4,499)	\$ (0.09)	\$ (446)	\$ (0.01)	\$ (2,118)	\$ (0.04)
Adjusted net loss, non-GAAP basis	\$ (12,804)	\$ (0.26)	\$ (1,268)	\$ (0.03)	\$ (6,030)	\$ (0.12)

The following table is a reconciliation of the projected net loss and net loss per diluted share for fiscal 2018 (on a GAAP basis) to the projected adjusted net loss and adjusted net loss per diluted shares (on a non-GAAP basis):

	Projected Fiscal 2018	
	per diluted share	
<i>(in millions, except per share data)</i>		
Net loss (GAAP basis)	\$ (8.3)-\$(14.3)	\$(0.17)-\$(0.29)
Income tax benefit, assuming 26% rate	\$2.1-\$3.7	\$0.05-\$0.07
Adjusted net loss (non-GAAP basis)	\$ (6.2)-\$(10.6)	\$(0.12)-\$(0.22)
Weighted average common shares outstanding - diluted	49.1	

#### Free Cash Flow

We calculate free cash flow as cash flow provided by operating activities less capital expenditures. Free cash flow excludes the mandatory and discretionary repayment of debt. While we expect to use funds from our revolver during the year, by year-end we expect all capital expenditures in fiscal 2018 will have been funded by our operations, which will enable us to reduce our debt levels.

The following table provides a reconciliation of free cash flow:

	Fiscal 2017		Fiscal 2016		Fiscal 2015		Projected Fiscal 2018	
	\$		\$		\$		\$	
<i>(in millions)</i>								
Cash flow from operating activities (GAAP) <sup>(1)</sup>	\$	31.0	\$	35.0	\$	18.4	\$	\$20.5-\$26.5
Capital expenditures, infrastructure projects		(9.7)		(9.6)		(13.3)		(9.3)
Capital expenditures for DXL stores		(12.9)		(19.6)		(20.1)		(2.1)
Free Cash Flow (non-GAAP)	\$	8.4	\$	5.8	\$	(15.0)	\$	\$9.1-\$15.1

(1) Cash flow from operating activities includes lease incentives received against our capital expenditures. Projected cash flow from operating activities for fiscal 2018 includes an estimated \$1.1 million in lease incentives.

#### EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA

EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA are presented because we believe that these measures are useful to investors in evaluating our performance. With the significant capital investment associated with the DXL transformation which has resulted in increased levels of depreciation expense, management uses EBITDA as a key metric to measure profitability and economic productivity.

EBITDA is calculated as earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization. Adjusted EBITDA is calculated as EBITDA before impairment charges.

The following table is a reconciliation of net loss on a GAAP basis to EBITDA and Adjusted EBITDA, on a non-GAAP basis, for each fiscal year. (Certain amounts in the following table do not foot due to rounding):

<i>(in millions)</i>	Fiscal 2017	Fiscal 2016	Fiscal 2015	Projected Fiscal 2018
Net loss, on a GAAP basis	\$ (18.8)	\$ (2.3)	\$ (8.4)	\$(8.3)-\$(14.3)
Add back:				
Provision (benefit) for income taxes	(2.6)	0.2	0.3	0.1
Interest Expense	3.4	3.1	3.1	3.1
Depreciation and amortization	31.1	30.2	28.4	29.1
EBITDA	\$ 13.0	\$ 31.2	\$ 23.3	\$18.0-\$24.0
Add back: Impairment charges	4.1	0.4	—	—
Adjusted EBITDA	\$ 17.1	\$ 31.6	\$ 23.3	\$18.0-\$24.0

#### *CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES; USE OF ESTIMATES*

Our financial statements are based on the application of significant accounting policies, many of which require our management to make significant estimates and assumptions (see Note A to the Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements). We believe that the following items involve some of the more critical judgments in the application of accounting policies that currently affect our financial condition and results of operations.

##### *Stock-Based Compensation*

We measure compensation cost for all stock-based awards at fair value on date of grant and recognize compensation over the service period for awards expected to vest.

The fair value of our stock options is determined using the Black-Scholes valuation model, which requires the input of subjective assumptions. These assumptions include estimating the length of time employees will retain their vested stock options before exercising them (the “expected term”), the estimated volatility of our common stock price over the expected term and the number of options that will ultimately not complete their vesting requirements (“forfeitures”). Changes in these subjective assumptions can materially affect the estimate of fair value of stock-based compensation and, consequently, the related amount recognized as an expense on the Consolidated Statements of Operations. As required under the accounting rules, we review our valuation assumptions at each grant date and, as a result, we are likely to change our valuation assumptions used to value employee stock-based awards granted in future periods. The values derived from using the Black-Scholes model are recognized as expense over the service period, net of estimated forfeitures. Actual results, and future changes in estimates, may differ substantially from these current estimates. For performance-based awards, no compensation expense is recognized until the performance targets are deemed probable. For fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, we recognized total stock-based compensation expense of \$1.6 million, \$1.3 million and \$2.2 million, respectively.

On March 20, 2017, in conjunction with the grant of restricted stock awards earned in fiscal 2016 under the 2016 Wrap-Around Plan, the Company reclassified \$0.9 million of the liability accrual from “*Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities*” to “*Additional Paid-In Capital*.” See the Consolidated Statement of Changes in Stockholders’ Equity.

##### *Long-Term Incentive Plans*

During fiscal 2017, we had two active Long-Term Incentive Plans (“LTIP”s): The 2016-2017 LTIP and the 2017-2018 LTIP. See Note F to the Consolidated Financial Statements for additional discussion of our LTIPs.

All time-based awards granted pursuant to our LTIPs are amortized, over each LTIP’s respective vesting periods.

Our LTIPs contain a dollar-denominated performance-based component. Equity awards will only be granted if such performance targets are achieved. Accordingly, each quarter the Company reviews its expected achievement against such performance targets to assess whether an accrual is necessary. All accruals are recorded as a liability. If performance targets are achieved and equity awards are granted, the related cost of those awards will be reclassified from the accrual to stock-based compensation on grant date.

For fiscal 2017, the Company has accrued as a liability approximately \$0.4 million based on partial achievement of the performance targets under the 2016-2017 LTIP. Subsequent to year-end, on March 21, 2018, the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors reviewed the results for fiscal 2017 and approved the grant of restricted stock unit awards totaling \$0.5 million to be granted on April 2, 2018. All awards are subject to further vesting through August 31, 2018.

With respect to the performance-based component of the 2017-2018 LTIP, which approximates \$2.0 million at target, RSUs will be granted at the end of the performance period if the performance targets are achieved. Through the end of fiscal 2017, we have not accrued any liability as the likelihood of achieving the performance targets was not probable.

#### Inventory

We value inventory at the lower of cost or market, using a weighted-average cost method. We review our inventory to identify slow-moving and broken assortments. We use markdowns to clear merchandise and will record inventory reserves if the estimated future selling price is less than cost. In addition, an inventory shrink estimate is made each period that reduces the value of inventory for lost or stolen merchandise. We perform physical inventories throughout the year and adjust the shrink reserves accordingly.

#### Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

We review our long-lived assets for impairment when indicators of impairment are present and the undiscounted cash flow estimated to be generated by those assets is less than the assets' carrying amount. We evaluate our long-lived assets for impairment at a store level for all our retail locations. If actual market conditions are less favorable than management's projections, future write-offs may be necessary.

For fiscal 2017 and fiscal 2016, we recorded impairment charges of \$4.1 million and \$0.4 million, respectively, to write-down property and equipment. The impairment charges relate to stores with carrying values which exceeded fair value. Fiscal 2017 also includes the write-off of \$1.9 million for certain technology projects that have been abandoned. There was no impairment charge for long-lived assets in fiscal 2015.

#### Intangibles

In accordance with ASC Topic 350, *Intangibles Goodwill and Other*, we evaluate our intangible assets with indefinite lives at least annually for impairment by analyzing the estimated fair value.

In the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017, we performed our annual testing of our "Rochester" trademark for potential impairment. Utilizing an income approach with appropriate royalty rates applied, we concluded that the "Rochester" trademark, with a carrying value of \$1.5 million, was not impaired.

Based on the expected closure of our Casual Male XL retail stores, at January 28, 2012, our "Casual Male" trademark was reclassified as a definite-lived asset. The trademark is being amortized, on an accelerated basis, through fiscal 2018, its estimated useful life. At February 3, 2018, the carrying value of the "Casual Male" trademark was \$0.3 million.

#### Income Taxes

In accordance with ASC Topic 740, *Income Taxes*, on a quarterly basis, we evaluate the realizability of our deferred tax assets and, if needed, establish a valuation allowance against those assets if it is determined that it is more likely than not that the deferred tax assets will not be realized.

In the fourth quarter of fiscal 2013, we entered into a three-year cumulative loss position and based on forecasts at that time, we expected the cumulative three-year loss to increase as of the end of fiscal 2014. Management determined that this represented significant negative evidence at February 1, 2014 and a full valuation allowance was established against our net deferred tax assets. While we have projected that the Company will return to profitability, generate taxable income and ultimately emerge from a three-year cumulative loss, based on actual results for fiscal 2017 and our forecast for fiscal 2018, we believe that a full allowance remains appropriate at this time.

Our effective tax rates could be affected by numerous factors, such as changes in our deferred tax assets and liabilities and their valuation, and changes in the relevant tax, accounting, and other laws, regulations, administrative practices, principles, and interpretation. The 2017 Tax Act significantly changes how corporations are taxed in the United States. The U.S. Treasury Department, the IRS, and other standard-setting bodies could subsequently interpret or issue guidance on how provisions of the 2017 Tax Act will be applied or otherwise administered that is different from our interpretation. However, because we have a full valuation allowance against our deferred tax assets at February 3, 2018, we do not expect that any subsequent interpretations or adjustments will have a material impact on our financial results.

#### *RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS*

We have reviewed accounting pronouncements and interpretations thereof that have effective dates during the periods reported and in future periods. See Note A to the Consolidated Financial Statements included in this report for information on recent accounting pronouncements and the impact of impending standards on our future filings.

#### **Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk**

In the normal course of business, our financial position and results of operations are routinely subject to a variety of risks, including market risk associated with interest rate movements on borrowings and foreign currency fluctuations. We regularly assess these risks and have established policies and business practices to protect against the adverse effects of these and other potential exposures.

##### Interest Rates

We utilize cash from our Credit Facility to fund our working capital needs. Our Credit Facility is not used for trading or speculative purposes. In addition, we have available letters of credit as sources of financing for our working capital requirements. Borrowings under the Credit Facility, which expires October 29, 2019, bear interest at variable rates based on Bank of America's prime rate or LIBOR. At February 3, 2018, we had outstanding borrowings of approximately \$47.6 million, of which approximately \$40.0 million were in LIBOR-based contracts with an interest rate of approximately 2.97%. The remainder was prime-based borrowings, with a rate of 5.00%. We also have a term loan, with an outstanding balance of \$11.8 million at February 3, 2018, which bears interest at a variable rate based on one-month LIBOR rates plus 6.5%.

Based upon a sensitivity analysis as of February 3, 2018, assuming average outstanding borrowings during fiscal 2017 of \$59.7 million under our Credit Facility and an average outstanding balance under our term loan of \$12.3 million, a 50 basis point increase in interest rates would have increased interest expense by approximately \$0.4 million on an annualized basis.

##### Foreign Currency

Our Rochester Clothing store located in London, England conducts business in British pounds and our two DXL stores located in Toronto, Canada conduct business in Canadian dollars. As of February 3, 2018 sales from these stores were immaterial to consolidated sales. As such, we believe that movement in foreign currency exchange rates will not have a material adverse effect on our financial position or results of operations.

DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.

INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<a href="#"><u>Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</u></a>	40
Consolidated Financial Statements:	
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Balance Sheets at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017</u></a>	41
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Fiscal Years Ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016</u></a>	42
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss) for the Fiscal Years Ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016</u></a>	43
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity for the Fiscal Years Ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016</u></a>	44
<a href="#"><u>Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Fiscal Years Ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016</u></a>	45
<a href="#"><u>Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</u></a>	46

## REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The Stockholders and Board of Directors  
Destination XL Group, Inc.

### *Opinion on the Consolidated Financial Statements*

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Destination XL Group, Inc. and subsidiaries (the Company) as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive income (loss), changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 3, 2018, and the related notes (collectively, the consolidated financial statements). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 3, 2018, in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission, and our report dated March 23, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting.

### *Basis for Opinion*

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ KPMG LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2013.

Boston, Massachusetts  
March 23, 2018

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS**  
**February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017**  
**(In thousands, except share data)**

	February 3, 2018 (Fiscal 2017)	January 28, 2017 (Fiscal 2016)
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<i>Current assets:</i>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 5,362	\$ 5,572
Accounts receivable	3,046	7,114
Inventories	103,332	117,446
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	9,927	8,817
Total current assets	<u>121,667</u>	<u>138,949</u>
Property and equipment, net of accumulated depreciation and amortization	111,032	124,347
<i>Other assets:</i>		
Intangible assets	1,821	2,228
Other assets	5,885	3,804
Total assets	<u>\$ 240,405</u>	<u>\$ 269,328</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
<i>Current liabilities:</i>		
Current portion of long-term debt	\$ 1,392	\$ 6,941
Current portion of deferred gain on sale-leaseback	1,465	1,465
Accounts payable	33,987	31,258
Accrued expenses and other current liabilities	25,585	31,938
Borrowings under credit facility	47,385	44,097
Total current liabilities	<u>109,814</u>	<u>115,699</u>
<i>Long-term liabilities:</i>		
Long-term debt, net of current portion	10,669	12,061
Deferred rent and lease incentives	35,718	35,421
Deferred gain on sale-leaseback, net of current portion	10,258	11,723
Deferred tax liability	—	222
Other long-term liabilities	3,960	5,682
Total long-term liabilities	<u>60,605</u>	<u>65,109</u>
Commitments and contingencies		
<i>Stockholders' equity:</i>		
Preferred stock, \$0.01 par value, 1,000,000 shares authorized, none issued	—	—
Common stock, \$0.01 par value, 100,000,000 shares authorized, 61,485,882 and 61,637,164 shares issued at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, respectively	615	616
Additional paid-in capital	307,557	304,466
Treasury stock at cost, 12,755,873 and 10,877,439 shares at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, respectively	(92,658)	(87,977)
Accumulated deficit	(139,285)	(122,567)
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(6,243)	(6,018)
Total stockholders' equity	<u>69,986</u>	<u>88,520</u>
Total liabilities and stockholders' equity	<u>\$ 240,405</u>	<u>\$ 269,328</u>

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.*

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS**  
For the fiscal years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016  
(In thousands, except per share data)

	February 3, 2018 (Fiscal 2017)	January 28, 2017 (Fiscal 2016)	January 30, 2016 (Fiscal 2015)
Sales	\$ 467,976	\$ 450,283	\$ 442,221
Cost of goods sold including occupancy costs	257,619	245,402	238,382
Gross profit	210,357	204,881	203,839
<b>Expenses:</b>			
Selling, general and administrative	193,230	173,283	180,570
Impairment of assets	4,095	376	—
Depreciation and amortization	31,073	30,245	28,359
Total expenses	228,398	203,904	208,929
Operating income (loss)	(18,041)	977	(5,090)
Interest expense, net	(3,357)	(3,067)	(3,058)
Loss before provision (benefit) for income taxes	(21,398)	(2,090)	(8,148)
Provision (benefit) for income taxes	(2,572)	166	260
Net loss	<u>\$ (18,826)</u>	<u>\$ (2,256)</u>	<u>\$ (8,408)</u>
Net loss per share - basic and diluted	\$ (0.39)	\$ (0.05)	\$ (0.17)
<b>Weighted-average number of common shares outstanding:</b>			
Basic	48,888	49,544	49,089
Diluted	48,888	49,544	49,089

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.*

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS)**  
**For the fiscal years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016**  
**(In thousands)**

	February 3, 2018 (Fiscal 2017)	January 28, 2017 (Fiscal 2016)	January 30, 2016 (Fiscal 2015)
Net loss	\$ (18,826)	\$ (2,256)	\$ (8,408)
Other comprehensive income (loss) before taxes:			
Foreign currency translation	393	(242)	(96)
Pension plan	1,490	876	1,682
Other comprehensive income (loss) before taxes	1,883	634	1,586
Tax provision related to items of other comprehensive income (loss)	—	—	—
Other comprehensive income (loss), net of tax	1,883	634	1,586
Comprehensive loss	<u>\$ (16,943)</u>	<u>\$ (1,622)</u>	<u>\$ (6,822)</u>

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.*

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CHANGES IN STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY**  
**For the fiscal years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016**  
**(In thousands)**

	Common Stock		Additional	Treasury Stock	Accumulated		Accumulated	Total
	Shares	Amounts	Paid-in Capital	Shares	Amounts	Deficit	Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)	
Balance at January 31, 2015	61,561	\$ 616	\$ 299,892	(10,877)	\$ (87,977)	\$ (111,903)	\$ (8,238)	\$ 92,390
Stock compensation expense			2,195					2,195
Exercises under option program	22	—	101					101
Issuances of restricted stock, net of cancellations	25	—	—					—
Board of Directors compensation	84	1	539					540
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss):								
Unrecognized gain associated with Pension Plan							1,682	1,682
Foreign currency							(96)	(96)
Net loss						(8,408)		(8,408)
Balance at January 30, 2016	<u>61,692</u>	<u>\$ 617</u>	<u>\$ 302,727</u>	<u>(10,877)</u>	<u>\$ (87,977)</u>	<u>\$ (120,311)</u>	<u>\$ (6,652)</u>	<u>\$ 88,404</u>
Stock compensation expense			1,256					1,256
Cancellations of restricted stock, net of issuances	(123)	(1)	1					—
Board of Directors compensation	68	—	482					482
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss):								
Unrecognized gain associated with Pension Plan							876	876
Foreign currency							(242)	(242)
Net loss						(2,256)		(2,256)
Balance at January 28, 2017	<u>61,637</u>	<u>\$ 616</u>	<u>\$ 304,466</u>	<u>(10,877)</u>	<u>\$ (87,977)</u>	<u>\$ (122,567)</u>	<u>\$ (6,018)</u>	<u>\$ 88,520</u>
Stock compensation expense			1,636					1,636
Restricted stock issued, reclass from liability to equity (Note F)	425	4	916					920
Cancellations of restricted stock, net of issuances	(755)	(7)	7					—
Board of directors compensation	179	2	532					534
Repurchase of common stock				(1,878)	(4,681)			(4,681)
Accumulated other comprehensive income (loss):								
Unrecognized gain associated with Pension Plan							1,490	1,490
Foreign currency							393	393
Adjustment to reclassify intraperiod tax allocation to accumulated deficit (Note D)						2,108	(2,108)	—
Net loss						(18,826)		(18,826)
Balance at February 3, 2018	<u>61,486</u>	<u>\$ 615</u>	<u>\$ 307,557</u>	<u>(12,755)</u>	<u>\$ (92,658)</u>	<u>\$ (139,285)</u>	<u>\$ (6,243)</u>	<u>\$ 69,986</u>

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.*

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS**  
**For the fiscal years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016**  
**(In thousands)**

	February 3, 2018 (Fiscal 2017)	January 28, 2017 (Fiscal 2016)	January 30, 2016 (Fiscal 2015)
<b>Cash flows from operating activities:</b>			
Net loss	\$ (18,826)	\$ (2,256)	\$ (8,408)
<b>Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash provided by operating activities:</b>			
Amortization of deferred gain on sale-leaseback	(1,465)	(1,466)	(1,465)
Amortization of deferred debt issuance costs	270	276	279
Impairment of assets	4,095	376	—
Depreciation and amortization	31,073	30,245	28,359
Deferred taxes, net of valuation allowance	(2,363)	26	105
Stock compensation expense	1,636	1,256	2,195
Issuance of common stock to Board of Directors	534	482	540
<b>Changes in operating assets and liabilities:</b>			
Accounts receivable	4,068	(2,393)	(1,102)
Inventories	14,114	7,568	(9,794)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(1,110)	(563)	659
Other assets	60	(247)	350
Accounts payable	2,729	574	705
Deferred rent and lease incentives	297	4,487	2,084
Accrued expenses and other liabilities	(4,153)	(3,405)	3,883
Net cash provided by operating activities	<u>30,959</u>	<u>34,960</u>	<u>18,390</u>
<b>Cash flows from investing activities:</b>			
Additions to property and equipment, net	(22,565)	(29,239)	(33,447)
Net cash used for investing activities	<u>(22,565)</u>	<u>(29,239)</u>	<u>(33,447)</u>
<b>Cash flows from financing activities:</b>			
Net borrowings under credit facility	3,165	1,993	23,044
Principal payments on long-term debt	(7,088)	(7,312)	(7,489)
Costs associated with debt issuances	—	—	(15)
Repurchase of common stock	(4,681)	—	—
Proceeds from the exercise of stock options	—	—	101
Net cash provided by (used for) financing activities	<u>(8,604)</u>	<u>(5,319)</u>	<u>15,641</u>
Net increase (decrease) in cash and cash equivalents	(210)	402	584
<b>Cash and cash equivalents:</b>			
Beginning of period	5,572	5,170	4,586
End of period	<u>\$ 5,362</u>	<u>\$ 5,572</u>	<u>\$ 5,170</u>

*The accompanying notes are an integral part of the consolidated financial statements.*

**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**  
**FEBRUARY 3, 2018**

**A. SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

***Nature of Business***

Destination XL Group, Inc. (collectively with its subsidiaries referred to as the “Company”) is the largest specialty retailer in the United States of big & tall men’s apparel. The Company operates under the trade names of Destination XL® (DXL®), DXL Outlets®, Casual Male XL®, Casual Male XL Outlets, Rochester Clothing, ShoesXL® and LivingXL®. At February 3, 2018, the Company operated 212 DXL stores, 78 Casual Male XL, 33 Casual Male XL outlets, 14 DXL outlets and 5 Rochester Clothing stores located throughout the United States, including one store in London, England and two stores in Canada. The Company also operates an e-commerce site to support its brands and product extensions.

***Basis of Presentation***

The consolidated financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its subsidiaries. All significant intercompany accounts, transactions and profits are eliminated.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared in accordance with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States. The preparation of financial statements in conformity with generally accepted accounting principles requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosures of contingent liabilities as of the date of the financial statements and the reported amounts of revenue and expenses during the reporting period. Actual results could differ from estimates.

***Subsequent Events***

All appropriate subsequent event disclosures, if any, have been made in these Notes to the Consolidated Financial Statements.

***Prior Period Reclassifications***

Certain prior period amounts have been reclassified to conform to the current period presentation. Impairment of assets, which was previously included in “Depreciation and Amortization” on the Consolidated Statement of Operations for fiscal 2016 has been reclassified to “Impairment of Assets” for comparability to fiscal 2017. There was no such impairment of assets in fiscal 2015.

***Segment Reporting***

The Company reports its operations as one reportable segment, Big & Tall Men’s Apparel, which consists of two principal operating segments: its retail business and its direct business. The Company considers its operating segments to be similar in terms of economic characteristics, production processes and operations, and have therefore aggregated them into a single reporting segment, consistent with its omni-channel business approach. The direct business operating segment includes the operating results and assets for LivingXL.

***Fiscal Year***

The Company’s fiscal year is a 52-week or 53-week period ending on the Saturday closest to January 31. Fiscal 2017 was a 53-week period which ended on February 3, 2018. Fiscal 2016 and 2015 were 52-week periods which ended on January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016, respectively.

***Cash and Cash Equivalents***

Cash and cash equivalents consist of cash in banks and short-term investments, which have a maturity of ninety days or less when acquired. Included in cash equivalents are credit card and debit card receivables from banks, which generally settle within two to four business days.

### **Accounts Receivable**

Accounts receivable primarily includes amounts due for tenant allowances and rebates from certain vendors. For fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, the Company has not incurred any losses on its accounts receivable.

### **Fair Value of Financial Instruments**

ASC Topic 825, *Financial Instruments*, requires disclosure of the fair value of certain financial instruments. The carrying amounts of cash and cash equivalents, accounts receivable, accounts payable, accrued expenses and short-term borrowings approximate fair value because of the short maturity of these instruments.

ASC Topic 820, *Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures*, defines fair value, establishes a framework for measuring fair value and enhances disclosures about fair value measurements.

The valuation techniques utilized are based upon observable and unobservable inputs. Observable inputs reflect market data obtained from independent sources, while unobservable inputs reflect internal market assumptions. These two types of inputs create the following fair value hierarchy:

Level 1 – Quoted prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2 – Observable inputs other than Level 1 prices such as quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities; quoted prices in markets that are not active or other inputs that are observable or can be corroborated by observable market data for substantially the full term of the related asset or liabilities.

Level 3 – Unobservable inputs that are supported by little or no market activity and that are significant to the fair value of assets or liabilities.

The Company utilizes observable market inputs (quoted market prices) when measuring fair value whenever possible.

The fair value of long-term debt at February 3, 2018 approximates the carrying amount based upon terms available to the Company for borrowings with similar arrangements and remaining maturities. See Note C, “Debt Obligations”, for more discussion.

The fair value of indefinite-lived assets, which consists of the Company’s “Rochester” trademark, is measured on a non-recurring basis in connection with the Company’s annual impairment test. The fair value of the trademark is determined using the relief from royalty method based on unobservable inputs and are classified within Level 3 of the valuation hierarchy. See *Intangibles* below.

Retail stores that have indicators of impairment and fail the recoverability test (based on undiscounted cash flows) are measured for impairment by comparing the fair value of the assets against their carrying value. Fair value of the assets is estimated using a projected discounted cash flow analysis and is classified within Level 3 of the valuation hierarchy. See *Impairment of Long-Lived Assets* below.

### **Inventories**

All inventories are valued at the lower of cost or market, using a weighted-average cost method.

### **Property and Equipment**

Property and equipment are stated at cost. Major additions and improvements are capitalized while repairs and maintenance are charged to expense as incurred. Upon retirement or other disposition, the cost and related depreciation of the assets are removed from the accounts and the resulting gain or loss, if any, is reflected in income. Depreciation is computed on the straight-line method over the assets’ estimated useful lives as follows:

Furniture and fixtures	Five to ten years
Equipment	Five to ten years
Leasehold improvements	Lesser of useful lives or related lease term
Hardware and software	Three to seven years

## Intangibles

ASC Topic 805, "Business Combinations," requires that all business combinations be accounted for under the purchase method. The statement further requires separate recognition of intangible assets that meet one of two criteria set forth in the statement. Under ASC Topic 350, "Intangibles Goodwill and Other," goodwill and intangible assets with indefinite lives are tested at least annually for impairment. At each reporting period, management analyzes current events and circumstances to determine whether the indefinite life classification for its "Rochester" trademark continues to be valid. If circumstances warrant a change to a finite life, the carrying value of the intangible asset would then be amortized prospectively over the estimated remaining useful life. The Company's "Casual Male" trademark is considered a finite-lived asset. Other intangible assets with defined lives are amortized over their useful lives.

At least annually, as of the Company's December month-end, the Company evaluates its "Rochester" trademark. The Company performs an impairment analysis and records an impairment charge for any intangible assets with a carrying value in excess of its fair value.

In the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017, the "Rochester" trademark was tested for potential impairment, utilizing the relief from royalty method to determine the estimated fair value. The Company concluded that the "Rochester" trademark, with a carrying value of \$1.5 million at February 3, 2018, was not impaired. Although some of the Rochester locations have closed as part of the DXL expansion, the Rochester Clothing stores that remain open as well as the Rochester brands that are sold in DXL stores and website are currently expected to generate more than sufficient cash flows to support the carrying value of \$1.5 million for the "Rochester" trademark.

During the fiscal 2011 annual evaluation of intangibles, the Company determined that its "Casual Male" trademark could no longer be considered an indefinite-lived asset. As the Company opens DXL stores, it is closing the majority of its Casual Male XL stores in those respective markets. The carrying value of the trademark is being amortized on an accelerated basis against projected cash flows through fiscal 2018, its estimated remaining useful life.

Below is a table showing the changes in the carrying value of the Company's intangible assets from January 28, 2017 to February 3, 2018:

<i>(in thousands)</i>	January 28, 2017	Additions	Impairment	Amortization	February 3, 2018
"Rochester" trademark	\$ 1,500	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 1,500
"Casual Male" trademark	599	—	—	(307)	292
Other intangibles (1)	129	—	—	(100)	29
Total intangible assets	<u>\$ 2,228</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ (407)</u>	<u>\$ 1,821</u>

- (1) Other intangibles consist of customer lists, which have a finite life of 16 years based on its estimated economic useful life. At February 3, 2018, customer lists have a remaining life of 3 months.

The gross carrying amount and accumulated amortization of the customer lists and "Casual Male" trademark, subject to amortization, were \$7.7 million and \$7.4 million, respectively, at February 3, 2018 and \$7.7 million and \$7.0 million, respectively, at January 28, 2017. Amortization expense for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015 was \$0.4 million, \$0.4 million and \$0.6 million, respectively.

Expected amortization expense for the Company's "Casual Male" trademark and customer lists, for the next five fiscal years is as follows:

FISCAL YEAR	<i>(in thousands)</i>
2018	\$ 321
2019	—
2020	—
2021	—
2022	—

## Pre-opening Costs

The Company expenses all pre-opening costs for its stores as incurred.

### Advertising Costs

The Company expenses in-store advertising costs as incurred. Television advertising costs are expensed in the period in which the advertising is first aired. Direct response advertising costs, if any, are deferred and amortized over the period of expected direct marketing revenues, which is less than one year. There were no deferred direct response costs at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017. Advertising expense, which is included in selling, general and administrative expenses, was \$29.5 million, \$18.2 million and \$23.6 million for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

### Revenue Recognition

Revenue from the Company's retail store operations is recorded upon purchase of merchandise by customers, net of an allowance for sales returns. Revenue from the Company's e-commerce operations is recognized at the time a customer order is delivered, net of an allowance for sales returns. Revenue is recognized by the operating segment that initiates a customer's order. Store sales are defined as sales that originate and are fulfilled directly at the store level. E-commerce sales are defined as sales that originate online, including those initiated online at the store level. Sales tax collected from customers is excluded from revenue and is included as part of accrued expenses on the Company's Consolidated Balance Sheets.

### Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss) – ("AOCI")

Other comprehensive income (loss) includes amounts related to foreign currency and pension plans and is reported in the Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income (Loss). Other comprehensive income and reclassifications from AOCI for fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015 are as follows:

(in thousands)	Fiscal 2017			Fiscal 2016			Fiscal 2015		
	Pension Plans	Foreign Currency	Total	Pension Plans	Foreign Currency	Total	Pension Plans	Foreign Currency	Total
Balance at beginning of fiscal year	\$ (5,237)	\$ (781)	\$ (6,018)	\$ (6,113)	\$ (539)	\$ (6,652)	\$ (7,795)	\$ (443)	\$ (8,238)
Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassifications, net of taxes	820	393	1,213	171	(242)	(71)	1,035	(96)	939
Amounts reclassified from accumulated other comprehensive income (loss), net of taxes <sup>(1)</sup>	670	—	670	705	—	705	647	—	647
Other comprehensive income (loss) for the period	1,490	393	1,883	876	(242)	634	1,682	(96)	1,586
Adjustment to reclassify intraperiod tax allocation to accumulated deficit (Note D)	(2,093)	(15)	(2,108)	—	—	—	—	—	—
Balance at end of fiscal year	\$ (5,840)	\$ (403)	\$ (6,243)	\$ (5,237)	\$ (781)	\$ (6,018)	\$ (6,113)	\$ (539)	\$ (6,652)

- (1) Includes the amortization of the unrecognized (gain)/loss on pension plans which was charged to Selling, General and Administrative expense on the Consolidated Statements of Operations for all periods presented. The amortization of the unrecognized loss, before tax, was \$670,000, \$705,000 and \$647,000 for fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, respectively. There was no corresponding tax benefit.

### Foreign Currency Translation

At February 3, 2018, the Company had one Rochester Clothing store located in London, England and two stores located in Toronto, Canada. Assets and liabilities for these stores are translated into U.S. dollars at the exchange rates in effect at each balance sheet date. Stockholders' equity is translated at applicable historical exchange rates. Income, expense and cash flow items are translated at average exchange rates during the period. Resulting translation adjustments are reported as a separate component of stockholders' equity.

### Shipping and Handling Costs

Shipping and handling costs are included in cost of sales for all periods presented. Amounts related to shipping and handling that are billed to customers are recorded in net sales, and the related costs are recorded in Cost of Goods Sold, Including Occupancy Costs, in the Consolidated Statements of Operations.

### Income Taxes

Deferred income taxes are provided to recognize the effect of temporary differences between tax and financial statement reporting. Such taxes are provided for using enacted tax rates expected to be in place when such temporary differences are realized. A valuation allowance is recorded to reduce deferred tax assets if it is determined that it is more likely than not that the full deferred tax asset would not be realized. If it is subsequently determined that a deferred tax asset will more likely than not be realized, a credit to earnings is recorded to reduce the allowance.

ASC Topic 740, *Income Taxes* ("ASC 740") clarifies a company's accounting for uncertain income tax positions that are recognized in its financial statements and also provides guidance on a company's de-recognition of uncertain positions, financial statement classification, accounting for interest and penalties, accounting for interim periods, and disclosure requirements. In accordance with ASC 740, the Company will recognize the benefit from a tax position only if it is more likely than not that the position would be sustained upon audit based solely on the technical merits of the tax position. The Company's policy is to recognize accrued interest and penalties related to unrecognized tax benefits as income tax expense in its Consolidated Statement of Operations. The Company has not accrued or paid interest or penalties which were material to its results of operations for fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015.

The Company is subject to U.S. federal income tax as well as income tax of multiple state and foreign jurisdictions. The Company has concluded all U.S. federal income tax matters for years through fiscal 2002, with remaining fiscal years subject to income tax examination by federal tax authorities.

### Net Loss Per Share

Basic earnings per share are computed by dividing net income (loss) by the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the respective period. Diluted earnings per share is determined by giving effect to unvested shares of restricted stock and the exercise of stock options using the treasury stock method. The following table provides a reconciliation of the number of shares outstanding for basic and diluted earnings per share:

	FISCAL YEARS ENDED		
	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017	January 30, 2016
<i>(in thousands)</i>			
Common stock outstanding:			
Basic weighted average common shares outstanding	48,888	49,544	49,089
Common stock equivalents – stock options, restricted stock and restricted stock units (RSUs) (1)	—	—	—
Diluted weighted average common shares outstanding	48,888	49,544	49,089

- (1) Common stock equivalents, in thousands, of 134 shares, 439 shares and 583 shares for February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016, respectively, were excluded due to the net loss.

The following potential common stock equivalents were excluded from the computation of diluted earnings per share in each year because the exercise price of such options was greater than the average market price per share of common stock for the respective periods or because the unearned compensation associated with either stock options, RSUs, restricted or deferred stock had an anti-dilutive effect.

<i>(in thousands, except exercise prices)</i>	FISCAL YEARS ENDED		
	<u>February 3, 2018</u>	<u>January 28, 2017</u>	<u>January 30, 2016</u>
Stock options (time-vested)	1,196	1,162	1,244
RSUs (time-vested)	732	370	—
Restricted and deferred stock	63	8	22
Range of exercise prices of such options	\$1.85-\$7.52	\$4.49-\$7.52	\$4.96-\$7.52

Excluded from the computation of basic earnings per shares in fiscal 2017 were 36,666 shares of unvested time-based restricted shares and 115,457 shares of deferred stock until such shares vest.

Although the shares of restricted stock are not considered outstanding for basic earnings per share purposes until vested, all shares of restricted stock were considered issued and outstanding at February 3, 2018. Each share of restricted stock has all of the rights of a holder of the Company's common stock, including, but not limited to, the right to vote and the right to receive dividends, which rights are forfeited if the restricted stock is forfeited. Outstanding shares of deferred stock are not considered issued and outstanding until the vesting date of the deferral period.

### ***Stock-based Compensation***

ASC Topic 718, *Compensation – Stock Compensation*, requires measurement of compensation cost for all stock awards at fair value on date of grant and recognition of compensation over the service period for awards expected to vest. The fair value of stock options is determined using the Black-Scholes valuation model and requires the input of subjective assumptions. These assumptions include estimating the length of time employees will retain their vested stock options before exercising them (the "expected term"), the estimated volatility of the Company's common stock price over the expected term and the number of options that will ultimately not complete their vesting requirements ("forfeitures"). As required under the accounting rules, the Company reviews its valuation assumptions at each grant date and, as a result, is likely to change its valuation assumptions used to value employee stock-based awards granted in future periods. The values derived from using the Black-Scholes model are recognized as expense over the vesting period, net of estimated forfeitures. The estimation of stock awards that will ultimately vest requires judgment. Actual results, and future changes in estimates, may differ from the Company's current estimates.

The Company recognized total stock-based compensation expense, with no tax effect, of \$1.6 million, \$1.3 million and \$2.2 million for fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, respectively.

The total stock-based compensation cost related to time-vested awards not yet recognized as of February 3, 2018 was approximately \$1.8 million and will be expensed over a weighted average remaining life of approximately 20 months.

The total grant-date fair value of awards vested was \$1.8 million, \$2.9 million and \$1.0 million for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

Any excess tax benefits resulting from the exercise of stock options or the release of restricted shares are recognized as a component of income tax expense. Prior to the adoption of ASU 2016-09 in fiscal 2017, any excess tax benefits were recognized as additional paid-in capital.

### Valuation Assumptions for Stock Options

The fair value of each option grant is estimated on the date of grant using the Black-Scholes option-pricing model with the following weighted-average assumptions used for grants in fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015:

<i>Fiscal years ended:</i>	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017	January 30, 2016
Expected volatility	49.9%	39.3%-42.7%	37.0%-39.0%
Risk-free interest rate	1.44%	0.78%-1.23%	0.75%-1.25%
Expected life (in years)	3.0	2.0	1.8-4.0
Dividend rate	—	—	—
Weighted average fair value of options granted	\$ 0.65	\$1.02	\$1.44

Expected volatilities are based on historical volatilities of the Company's common stock; the expected life represents the weighted average period of time that options granted are expected to be outstanding giving consideration to vesting schedules and historical exercise patterns; and the risk-free rate is based on the U.S. Treasury yield curve in effect at the time of grant for periods corresponding with the expected life of the option.

### Impairment of Long-Lived Assets

The Company reviews its long-lived assets for events or changes in circumstances that might indicate the carrying amount of the assets may not be recoverable. The Company assesses the recoverability of the assets by determining whether the carrying value of such assets over their respective remaining lives can be recovered through projected undiscounted future cash flows. The amount of impairment, if any, is measured based on projected discounted future cash flows using a discount rate reflecting the Company's average cost of funds.

For fiscal 2017 and fiscal 2016, the Company recorded impairment charges of \$4.1 million and \$0.4 million, respectively, for the write-down of property and equipment. Impairment charges related to stores where the carrying value exceeded fair value. The fair value of these assets, based on Level 3 inputs, was determined using estimated discounted cash flows. Also included in the charge for fiscal 2017 was the write-off of certain costs of \$1.9 million associated with technology projects that were abandoned.

The impairment charge for fiscal 2016 was reclassified from "Depreciation and amortization" to "Impairment of assets" on the Consolidated Statement of Operations, for comparability with fiscal 2017. There was no material impairment of assets in fiscal 2015.

### Unredeemed Gift Cards, Gift Certificates, and Credit Vouchers

Upon issuance of a gift card, gift certificate, or credit voucher, a liability is established for its cash value. The liability is relieved and net sales are recorded upon redemption by the customer. Based on historical redemption patterns, the Company can reasonably estimate the amount of gift cards, gift certificates, and credit vouchers for which redemption is remote, which is referred to as "breakage". Breakage is recognized over two years in proportion to historical redemption trends and is recorded as net sales in the Consolidated Statements of Operations. The gift card liability, net of breakage, was \$2.2 million and \$2.4 million at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, respectively.

### Recently Adopted Accounting Pronouncements

In July 2015, the FASB issued ASU 2015-11, "Inventory (Topic 330): Simplifying the Measurement of Inventory," which applies to inventory that is measured using first-in, first-out ("FIFO") or average cost. Under the updated guidance, an entity should measure inventory that is within scope at the lower of cost and net realizable value, which is the estimated selling price in the ordinary course of business, less reasonably predictable costs of completion, disposal and transportation. The Company adopted this pronouncement as of January 29, 2017. The adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company's Consolidated Financial Statements.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-09, "Compensation - Stock Compensation (Topic 718) - Improvements to Employee Share-Based Payment Accounting," which simplifies several aspects of the accounting for share-based payment transactions, including the income tax consequences, classification of awards, and classification on the statement of cash flows. The standard is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2016, including interim periods within those fiscal years. The Company adopted this standard during the first quarter of fiscal 2017. The adoption of this standard did not have a material impact on the Company's provision for income taxes or diluted earnings per share. The Company has elected to adopt the guidance related to the presentation of excess tax benefits in its Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows on a prospective transition method. Since there were no excess tax benefits for fiscal 2017, 2016 or 2015 this election did not result in a change in presentation on the Consolidated Statement of Cash Flows. In addition, the Company has elected to continue to estimate forfeitures at each grant.

## Recent Accounting Pronouncements

The Company has reviewed accounting pronouncements and interpretations thereof that have effective dates during the periods reported and in future periods. The Company believes that the following impending standards may have an impact on its future filings.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*, which amends the accounting guidance on revenue recognition. The amendments in this ASU are intended to provide a framework for addressing revenue issues, improve comparability of revenue recognition practices, and improve disclosure requirements. This ASU sets forth a five-step model for determining when and how revenue is recognized. Under the model, an entity will be required to recognize revenue to depict the transfer of goods or services to a customer at an amount reflecting the consideration it expects to receive in exchange for those goods or services. The amendments in this accounting standard update are effective for interim and annual reporting periods beginning after December 15, 2017. The standard can be adopted either retrospectively to each reporting period presented or as a cumulative effect adjustment as of the date of adoption. To assess the impact of ASU 2014-09, the Company reviewed its current accounting policies and practices, identified all material revenue streams, assessed the impact of the ASU on its material revenue streams and identified potential differences with current policies and practices.

The Company plans to adopt this standard in the first quarter of fiscal 2018, with no significant impact, using the modified retrospective approach. Generally, the Company's performance obligations are satisfied the same day that contracts with customers are initiated. As such, the adoption of the new standard will not have a material impact on the Company's Consolidated Financial Statements, business processes, controls or systems, but the Company expects to have enhanced disclosures related to disaggregation of revenue sources and accounting policies.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842)*. This ASU is a comprehensive new leases standard that amends various aspects of existing guidance for leases and requires additional disclosures about leasing arrangements. It will require lessees to recognize lease assets and lease liabilities for most leases, including those leases previously classified as operating leases under current GAAP. The ASU retains a distinction between finance leases and operating leases. The classification criteria for distinguishing between finance leases and operating leases are substantially similar to the classification criteria for distinguishing between capital leases and operating leases in the previous leases guidance. The ASU is effective for annual periods beginning after December 15, 2018, including interim periods within those years; earlier adoption is permitted. While there is an exposure draft to amend Topic 842 to provide entities with an additional transition method, presently the Company would be required to adopt this ASU using the modified retrospective approach.

The Company has selected its leasing software solution and is in the process of identifying changes to its business processes, systems and controls to support adoption of the new standard in fiscal 2019. The Company is evaluating the impact that the new standard will have on the consolidated financial statements. While the Company is still in the process of quantifying the impact, it expects the adoption of the new standard to result in a material gross-up of its Consolidated Balance Sheets as a result of recognizing lease liabilities and right of use assets.

In March 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-04, *Liabilities—Extinguishments of Liabilities: Recognition of Breakage for Certain Prepaid Stored-Value Products*, which amends exempting gift cards and other prepaid stored-value products from the guidance on extinguishing financial liabilities. Rather, they will be subject to breakage accounting consistent with the new revenue guidance in Topic 606. However, the exemption only applies to breakage liabilities that are not subject to unclaimed property laws or that are attached to segregated bank accounts (e.g., consumer debit cards). The ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted. The Company will adopt ASU 2016-04 in the first quarter of fiscal 2018 and does not expect the adoption of this pronouncement to have a material impact on its Consolidated Financial Statements.

In August 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-15, *Statement of Cash Flows (Topic 230): Classification of Certain Cash Receipts and Cash Payments*, which reduces the existing diversity in practice in how certain cash receipts and cash payments are presented and classified in the statement of cash flows under Topic 230. The ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The Company will adopt ASU 2016-15 in the first quarter of fiscal 2018 and does not expect the adoption of this pronouncement to have a material impact on its Consolidated Financial Statements.

In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-16, *Income Taxes (Topic 740): Intra-Entity Transfer of Assets Other Than Inventory*, which reduces the existing diversity in practice in how income tax consequences of an intra-entity transfer of an asset other than inventory should be recognized. The amendments in ASU 2016-16 require an entity to recognize such income tax consequences when the intra-entity transfer occurs rather than waiting until such time as the asset has been sold to an outside party. The ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those fiscal years. The Company does not expect the adoption of this pronouncement to have a material impact on its Consolidated Financial Statements.

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-09, “*Compensation—Stock Compensation (Topic 718)*” which provides clarity in order to reduce both (1) diversity in practice and (2) cost and complexity when applying the guidance in Topic 718, Compensation—Stock Compensation, to a change to the terms or conditions of a share-based payment award. Under the new guidance, modification accounting is required only if the fair value, the vesting conditions, or the classification of the award (as equity or liability) changes as a result of the change in terms or conditions. The ASU is effective for fiscal years beginning after December 15, 2017, and interim periods within those fiscal years. Early adoption is permitted. The Company will adopt ASU 2017-09 in the first quarter of fiscal 2018 and does not expect the adoption of this pronouncement to have a material impact on its Consolidated Financial Statements.

No other new accounting pronouncements, issued or effective during fiscal 2017, have had or are expected to have a significant impact on the Company’s Consolidated Financial Statements.

## B. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Property and equipment consisted of the following at the dates indicated:

<i>(in thousands)</i>	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017
Furniture and fixtures	\$ 75,895	\$ 72,440
Equipment	21,612	20,453
Leasehold improvements	117,274	107,470
Hardware and software	84,532	76,923
Construction in progress	4,981	9,892
	<u>304,294</u>	<u>287,178</u>
Less: accumulated depreciation	193,262	162,831
Total property and equipment	<u>\$ 111,032</u>	<u>\$ 124,347</u>

Depreciation expense for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015 was \$30.7 million, \$29.8 million and \$27.7 million, respectively.

## C. DEBT OBLIGATIONS

### *Credit Agreement with Bank of America, N.A.*

On October 30, 2014, the Company amended its credit facility with Bank of America, N.A., effective October 29, 2014, by executing the Second Amendment to the Sixth Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement (as amended, the “Credit Facility”).

The Credit Facility provides for \$125 million in committed borrowings. The Credit Facility includes, pursuant to an accordion feature, the ability to increase the Credit Facility by an additional \$50 million upon the request of the Company and the agreement of the lender(s) participating in the increase. The Credit Facility includes a sublimit of \$20 million for commercial and standby letters of credit and a sublimit of up to \$15 million for swingline loans. The Company’s ability to borrow under the Credit Facility is determined using an availability formula based on eligible assets. The maturity date of the Credit Facility is October 29, 2019. The Company’s obligations under the Credit Facility are secured by a lien on substantially all of its assets, excluding (i) a first priority lien held by the lenders of the Term Loan Facility, as described below, on certain equipment of the Company and (ii) intellectual property.

At February 3, 2018, the Company had outstanding borrowings under the Credit Facility of \$47.6 million, before unamortized debt issuance costs of \$0.2 million. Outstanding standby letters of credit were \$3.3 million and documentary letters of credit were \$1.3 million. Unused excess availability at February 3, 2018 was \$37.5 million. Average monthly borrowings outstanding under the Credit Facility during fiscal 2017 were \$59.7 million, resulting in an average unused excess availability of approximately \$42.5 million. The Company’s ability to borrow under the Credit Facility is determined using an availability formula based on eligible assets, with increased advance rates based on seasonality. Pursuant to the terms of the Credit Facility, if the Company’s excess availability under the Credit Facility fails to be equal to or greater than the greater of (i) 10% of the Loan Cap (defined in the Credit Facility as the lesser of the revolving credit commitments at such time or the borrowing base at the relevant measurement time) and (ii) \$7.5 million, the Company will be required to maintain a minimum consolidated fixed charge coverage ratio of 1.0:1.0 in order to pursue certain transactions, including but not limited to, stock repurchases, payment of dividends and business acquisitions.

Borrowings made pursuant to the Credit Facility bear interest at a rate equal to the base rate (determined as the highest of (a) Bank of America N.A.’s prime rate, (b) the Federal Funds rate plus 0.50% or (c) the annual ICE-LIBOR rate (“LIBOR”) for the respective interest period) plus a varying percentage, based on the Company’s borrowing base, of 0.50%-0.75% for prime-based borrowings and 1.50%-1.75% for LIBOR-based borrowings. The Company is also subject to an unused line fee of 0.25%. At February 3, 2018, the Company’s prime-based interest rate was 5.00%.

At February 3, 2018, the Company had approximately \$40.0 million of its outstanding borrowings in a LIBOR-based contract with an interest rate of approximately 2.97%. The LIBOR-based contract expired February 6, 2018. When a LIBOR-based borrowing expires, the borrowings revert back to prime-based borrowings unless the Company enters into a new LIBOR-based borrowing arrangement.

The fair value of the amount outstanding under the Credit Facility at February 3, 2018 approximated the carrying value.

### **Long-Term Debt**

Components of long-term debt are as follows:

<i>(in thousands)</i>	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017
Equipment financing notes	\$ 501	\$ 6,589
Term loan, due 2019	11,750	12,750
Less: unamortized debt issuance costs	(190)	(337)
Total long-term debt	12,061	19,002
Less: current portion of long-term debt	1,392	6,941
Long-term debt, net of current portion	\$ 10,669	\$ 12,061

### Equipment Financing Loans

Pursuant to a Master Loan and Security Agreement with Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC, dated July 20, 2007 and amended September 30, 2013 (the "Master Agreement"), the Company has entered into twelve equipment security notes (in aggregate, the "Notes"). The Company borrowed an aggregate of \$26.4 million between September 2013 and June 2014. The Notes are for a term of 48 months and accrue interest at fixed rates ranging from 3.07% to 3.50%. Principal and interest are paid monthly, in arrears.

The Notes are secured by a security interest in all of the Company's rights, title and interest in and to certain equipment. The Company was subject to prepayment penalties through the second anniversary of each of the Notes. The Company is no longer subject to any prepayment penalties. The Master Agreement includes default provisions that are customary for financings of this type and are similar and no more restrictive than the Company's existing Credit Facility.

### Term Loan

On October 30, 2014, the Company entered into a term loan agreement with respect to a new \$15 million senior secured term loan facility with Wells Fargo Bank, National Association as administrative and collateral agent (the "Term Loan Facility"). The effective date of the Term Loan Facility was October 29, 2014 (the "Effective Date"). The proceeds from the Term Loan Facility were used to repay borrowings under the Credit Facility.

The Term Loan Facility bears interest at a rate per annum equal to the greater of (a) 1.00% and (b) the one month LIBOR rate, plus 6.50%. Interest payments are payable on the first business day of each calendar month, and increase by 2% following the occurrence and during the continuance of an "event of default," as defined in the Term Loan Facility. The Term Loan Facility provides for quarterly principal payments on the first business day of each calendar quarter, which commenced the first business day of January 2015, in an aggregate principal amount equal to \$250,000, subject to adjustment, with the balance payable on the termination date.

The Term Loan Facility includes usual and customary mandatory prepayment provisions for transactions of this type that are triggered by the occurrence of certain events. In addition, the amounts advanced under the Term Loan Facility can be optionally prepaid in whole or part. The Company is no longer subject to any prepayment penalties.

The Term Loan Facility matures on October 29, 2019. It is secured by a first priority lien on certain equipment of the Company, and a second priority lien on substantially all of the remaining assets of the Company, excluding intellectual property.

### Long-term debt maturities

Annual maturities of long-term debt for the next five fiscal years are as follows:

	<i>(in thousands)</i>
Fiscal 2018	\$ 1,501
Fiscal 2019	10,750
Fiscal 2020	—
Fiscal 2021	—
Fiscal 2022	—

The Company paid interest and fees totaling \$3.2 million, \$2.8 million and \$2.8 million for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

### D. INCOME TAXES

The Company accounts for income taxes in accordance with ASC Topic 740, *Income Taxes*. Under ASC Topic 740, deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized based on temporary differences between the financial statement and tax basis of assets and liabilities using enacted tax rates in effect in the years in which the differences are expected to reverse. The accounting regulation requires current recognition of net deferred tax assets to the extent it is more likely than not such net assets will be realized. To the extent that the Company believes its net deferred tax assets will not be realized, a valuation allowance must be recorded against those assets.

Since the fourth quarter of fiscal 2013, the Company has maintained a valuation allowance against its deferred tax assets. While the Company has projected it will return to profitability, generate taxable income and ultimately emerge from a three-year cumulative loss, based on operating results for fiscal 2017 and the Company's forecast for fiscal 2018, the Company believes that a full allowance remains appropriate at this time. Realization of the Company's deferred tax assets is dependent on generating sufficient taxable income in the near term.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "2017 Tax Act") was enacted on December 22, 2017. The 2017 Tax Act reduced the U.S. federal corporate tax rate from 35% to 21%, eliminated the 20-year limit on the carryforward of losses, and resulted in the Company remeasuring its existing deferred tax balances. In addition, the 2017 Tax Act limits the future deductibility of certain items, such as certain compensation and interest expenses, and allows qualifying capital expenditures to be deducted fully in the year of purchase. The Company remeasured deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse in the future, which is generally 21%. Because the Company's valuation allowance against these deferred assets was also remeasured, there was no impact to the Company's income tax provision, see the reconciliation table between the statutory and effective income tax rates. The Tax Act will allow for the indefinite carryforward of future net operating losses and will impose an annual limitation on the utilization of future losses, based on 80% of taxable income.

As of February 3, 2018, for federal income tax purposes, the Company has net operating loss carryforwards of \$141.4 million, which will expire from 2022 through 2036 and net operating loss carryforwards of \$16.1 million that are not subject to expiration. For state income tax purposes, the Company has \$88.6 million of net operating losses that are available to offset future taxable income. Additionally, the Company has \$2.8 million of net operating loss carryforwards related to the Company's operations in Canada.

The utilization of net operating loss carryforwards and the realization of tax benefits in future years depends predominantly upon having taxable income. Under the provisions of the Internal Revenue Code, certain substantial changes in the Company's ownership may result in a limitation on the amount of net operating loss carryforwards and tax credit carryforwards which may be used in future years.

As part of the 2017 Tax Act, the corporate alternative minimum tax ("AMT") was repealed and the Company's AMT credit of \$2.1 million became refundable. Accordingly, the Company reversed its valuation allowance against the AMT credit, recognized an income tax benefit for \$2.1 million and established a non-current receivable of \$2.1 million, which will be realized over the next four years.

During 2017, the Company reclassified approximately \$2.1 million to accumulated deficit from accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) due to intraperiod tax allocations. Approximately \$1.4 million of this pertained to years prior to FY 2017.

The components of the net deferred tax assets as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017 were as follows (in thousands):

	<u>February 3, 2018</u>	<u>January 28, 2017</u>
<b>Deferred tax assets:</b>		
Net operating loss carryforward	\$ 38,801	\$ 50,399
Gain on sale-leaseback	3,036	5,170
Accrued expenses and other	2,089	4,340
Lease accruals	2,322	4,358
Goodwill and intangibles	338	1,513
Unrecognized loss on pension and pension expense	1,801	3,311
Capital loss carryforward	1,996	3,021
Inventory reserves	1,539	2,659
Alternative minimum tax credit carryforward	—	2,292
Foreign tax credit carryforward	766	901
Federal wage tax credit carryforward	824	707
Unrecognized loss on foreign exchange	148	328
State tax credits	147	124
Excess of tax over book depreciation/amortization	(6,144)	(15,192)
Subtotal	\$ 47,663	\$ 63,931
Valuation allowance	(47,663)	(63,931)
Net deferred tax assets	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
<b>Deferred tax liabilities:</b>		
Goodwill and intangibles	\$ —	\$ (222)
Deferred tax liabilities	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ (222)</u>

For fiscal 2017, the Company had total deferred tax assets of \$53.8 million, total deferred tax liabilities of \$6.1 million and a valuation allowance of \$47.7 million.

The provision (benefit) for income taxes consisted of the following:

	FISCAL YEARS ENDED		
	<u>February 3, 2018</u>	<u>January 28, 2017</u>	<u>January 30, 2016</u>
<i>(in thousands)</i>			
<b>Current:</b>			
Federal and state	\$ (109)	\$ 91	\$ 104
Foreign	(100)	49	51
	(209)	140	155
<b>Deferred:</b>			
Federal and state	(2,363)	23	94
Foreign	—	3	11
	(2,363)	26	105
Total provision (benefit)	<u>\$ (2,572)</u>	<u>\$ 166</u>	<u>\$ 260</u>

The following is a reconciliation between the statutory and effective income tax rates in dollars for the provision (benefit) for income tax:

	FISCAL YEARS ENDED		
	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017	January 30, 2016
<i>(in thousands)</i>			
Federal income tax at the statutory rate (1)	\$ (7,215)	\$ (732)	\$ (2,852)
State income and other taxes, net of federal tax benefit	(407)	(1)	(177)
Federal rate change on deferred assets (2)	22,796	—	—
Federal rate change on valuation allowance (2)	(22,796)	—	—
Permanent items	563	225	137
Change in uncertain tax provisions	—	—	—
Charge for valuation allowance	7,249	775	3,200
Refundable AMT credit	(2,141)	—	—
Other, net	(621)	(101)	(48)
Total provision (benefit)	<u>\$ (2,572)</u>	<u>\$ 166</u>	<u>\$ 260</u>

- (1) The federal income tax at the statutory rate for fiscal 2017 reflects a blended rate of 33.72%, based on the statutory rate decreasing from 35% to 21% on January 1, 2018.
- (2) This represents the federal rate change impact as of the end of fiscal 2017. The rate change impact on deferred assets and valuation allowance as a result of the 2017 Tax Act was \$22.8 million.

As discussed in Note A, the Company's financial statements reflect the expected future tax consequences of uncertain tax positions that the Company has taken or expects to take on a tax return, based solely on the technical merits of the tax position. The liability for unrecognized tax benefits at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017 was approximately \$2.0 million and \$3.1 million, respectively, and was associated with a prior tax position related to exiting the Company's direct business in Europe during fiscal 2013. The amount of unrecognized tax benefits has been presented as a reduction in the reported amounts of the Company's federal and state net operating losses carryforwards. No penalties or interest have been accrued on this liability because the carryforwards have not yet been utilized. The reversal of this liability would result in a tax benefit being recognized in the period in which the Company determines the liability is no longer necessary.

The Company made tax payments of \$0.1 million, \$0.1 million and \$0.1 million for fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

#### E. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

At February 3, 2018, the Company was obligated under operating leases covering store and office space, automobiles and certain equipment for future minimum rentals, merchandise purchase obligations and a non-merchandise purchase agreement as follows:

FISCAL YEAR	Total <i>(in millions)</i>
Fiscal 2018	\$ 70.1
Fiscal 2019	63.6
Fiscal 2020	59.8
Fiscal 2021	47.5
Fiscal 2022	43.5
Thereafter	90.0
	<u>\$ 374.5</u>

In addition to future minimum rental payments, many of the store leases include provisions for common area maintenance, mall charges, escalation clauses and additional rents based on a percentage of store sales above designated levels. The store leases are generally 5 to 10 years in length and contain renewal options extending their terms by 5 to 10 years.

Amounts charged to operations for all occupancy costs, automobile and leased equipment expense were \$66.0 million, \$63.9 million and \$62.0 million for fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015, respectively.

In fiscal 2006, as part of a sale-leaseback transaction with a subsidiary of Spirit Finance Corp. (“Spirit”), the Company entered into a 20-year lease agreement (the “Lease Agreement”) for its corporate headquarters and distribution center whereby the Company agreed to lease the property it sold to Spirit back for an annual rent of \$4.6 million. The Company realized a gain of approximately \$29.3 million on the sale of this property, which has been deferred and is being amortized over the initial 20 years of the related lease agreement. At the end of the initial term, the Company will have the opportunity to extend the Lease Agreement for six additional successive periods of five years. In addition, on February 1, 2011, the fifth anniversary of the Lease Agreement and for every fifth anniversary thereafter, the base rent will be subject to a rent increase not to exceed the lesser of 7% or a percentage based on changes in the Consumer Price Index. The Company’s current annual rent of \$5.2 million will be offset each lease year by \$1.5 million related to the amortization of this deferred gain. This lease commitment, excluding the impact of the gain, is included in the above table of expected future minimum rentals obligations.

Included in the table above, is a merchandise purchase obligation for which the Company is contractually committed to meet minimum purchases of \$11.5 million in fiscal 2018, \$10.0 million in fiscal 2019 and \$10.0 million in fiscal 2020.

## **F. LONG-TERM INCENTIVE PLANS**

The following is a summary of the Company’s long-term incentive plans. All equity awards granted under these long-term incentive plans were issued from the Company’s 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan until July 31, 2016 when the 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan expired. As of August 4, 2016, all grants of equity awards are issued under the Company’s stockholder-approved 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan. See Note G, “Stock Compensation Plans.”

### 2016 Long-Term Incentive Wrap-Around Plan

The 2016 Long-Term Incentive Wrap-Around Plan (the “2016 Wrap”), which was approved in the fourth quarter of fiscal 2014, was a supplemental performance-based incentive plan that was only effective if there was no vesting of the performance-based awards under the 2013-2016 LTIP and, as a result, all performance-based awards under that plan are forfeited. The performance targets under the 2013-2016 LTIP were not achieved at the end of fiscal 2016 and accordingly, the Wrap-Around Plan became effective.

The performance target under the 2016 Wrap consisted of two metrics, Sales and EBITDA, with threshold (50%), target (80%) and maximum (100%) payout levels. Each metric was weighted as 50% of the total performance target. However, in order for there to be any payout under either metric, EBITDA for fiscal 2016 must be equal to or greater than the minimum threshold.

The 2016 Wrap also provided for an opportunity to receive additional shares of restricted stock if the performance targets were achieved and the Company’s closing stock price was \$6.75 or higher on the day earnings for fiscal 2016 are publicly released, which was March 20, 2017. The stock did not achieve a minimum of \$6.75, therefore, no additional award was earned.

Based on the operating results for fiscal 2016, the Company achieved 50.6% of its EBITDA target. The minimum threshold for the Sales target was not achieved. Accordingly, in the first quarter of fiscal 2017, the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors approved awards totaling \$2.3 million, with a grant date of March 20, 2017. On that date, the Company granted shares of restricted stock, with a fair value of approximately \$1.0 million and cash awards totaling approximately \$1.3 million. All outstanding awards vested on July 28, 2017.

On March 20, 2017, in conjunction with the grant of these restricted stock awards, the Company reclassified \$0.9 million of the liability accrual from “Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities” to “Additional Paid-in Capital.” See the Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders’ Equity.

### Long-Term Incentive Plan

On March 15, 2016, the Compensation Committee approved the Destination XL Group, Inc. Long-Term Incentive Plan, as amended February 1, 2017 (the “LTIP”).

Under the terms of the LTIP, each year the Compensation Committee will establish performance targets which will cover a two-year performance period (each a “Performance Period”), thereby creating overlapping Performance Periods. Each participant in the plan will be entitled to receive an award based on that participant’s “Target Cash Value” which is defined as the participant’s annual base salary (on the participant’s effective date) multiplied by his or her long-term incentive program percentage, which is 100% for the Company’s Chief Executive Officer, 70% for its senior executives and 25% for other participants in the plan. The Target Cash Value for any award is based on one year of annual salary.

For each participant, 50% of the Target Cash Value is subject to time-based vesting and 50% is subject to performance-based vesting. The time-vested portion of the award vests in two installments with 50% of the time-vested portion vesting on April 1 following the fiscal year end which marks the end of the applicable Performance Period and 50% vesting on April 1 the succeeding year. The performance-based vesting is subject to the achievement of the performance target(s) for the applicable Performance Period. Any performance award granted vests on August 31 following the end of the applicable Performance Period.

For the 2016-2017 Performance Period, the Compensation Committee established two performance targets under the LTIP (the “2016-2017 LTIP”), each weighted 50%. The first target was EBITDA for fiscal 2017, defined as earnings before interest, taxes, depreciation and amortization, and the second target was “DXL Comparable Store Marginal Cash-Over-Cash Return,” defined as the aggregate of each comparable DXL store’s four-wall cash flow for fiscal 2017 divided by the aggregate capital investment, net of any tenant allowance, for each comparable DXL store.

For the 2017-2018 Performance Period, the Compensation Committee established two performance targets under the LTIP (the “2017-2018 LTIP”), each weighted 50%. The first target is Total Company Comparable Sales and will be measured based on a two-year stack, which is the sum of the Total Company Comparable Sales for fiscal 2017 and fiscal 2018. The second target is a Modified ROIC, which is defined as Operating Income divided by Invested Capital (Total Debt plus Stockholders’ Equity).

All time-based awards granted under both the 2016-2017 LTIP and 2017-2018 LTIP were in restricted stock units (RSUs). As of February 3, 2018, the stock-based compensation associated with the time-based awards of \$1.9 million and \$2.0 million, respectively, for the 2016-2017 LTIP and the 2017-2018 LTIP, is being expensed over thirty-six months, based on the respective vesting dates. With respect to the performance-based component, based on operating results for fiscal 2017, the Company achieved 54.4% payout of its DXL Comparable Store Marginal Cash-Over-Over-Cash Return target under the 2016-2017 LTIP. The minimum threshold for the EBITDA target was not achieved. Accordingly, subsequent to year-end, on March 21, 2018 the Compensation Committee approved the grant of restricted stock unit awards totaling \$0.5 million, with a grant date of April 2, 2018. The awards are subject to further vesting through August 31, 2018. At February 3, 2018, \$0.4 million of the \$0.5 million performance-based component was accrued.

Assuming that the Company achieves, at target, the performance targets under the 2017-2018 LTIP, the compensation expense is estimated to be approximately \$2.0 million. Through the end of the fiscal 2017, because the performance targets were not deemed probable at February 3, 2018, no compensation expense for the performance-based compensation under the 2017-2018 LTIP has been recognized through fiscal 2017.

## **G. STOCK COMPENSATION PLANS**

Through the end of the second quarter of fiscal 2016, the Company’s 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan (as amended and restated effective as of August 1, 2013, the “2006 Plan”) was the only stockholder approved plan. The 2006 Plan expired on July 31, 2016. In the third quarter of fiscal 2016, at the Company’s 2016 Annual Meeting of Stockholders held August 4, 2016, the Company’s stockholders approved the adoption of the 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan (the “2016 Plan”).

### 2016 Plan

The initial share reserve under the 2016 Plan is 5,200,000 shares of the Company’s common stock. A grant of a stock option award or stock appreciation right reduces the outstanding reserve on a one-for-one basis. A grant of a full-value award, including, but not limited to, restricted stock, restricted stock units and deferred stock, reduces the outstanding reserve by a fixed ratio of 1.9 shares for every share granted.

In addition to the initial share reserve of 5,200,000 shares, the 525,538 shares that remained available under the 2006 Plan were added and became available for issuance under the 2016 Plan on August 4, 2016. In accordance with the terms of the 2016 Plan, any shares outstanding under the 2006 Plan at August 4, 2016 that subsequently terminate, expire or are canceled for any reason without having been exercised or paid are added back and become available for issuance under the 2016 Plan, with options and stock appreciation rights being added back on a one-for-one basis and full-value awards being added back on a 1 to 1.9 basis. Accordingly, an additional 3,610,963 shares have been added to share availability under the 2016 Plan since August 2016. At February 3, 2018, the Company had 6,536,551 shares available under the 2016 Plan.

The 2016 Plan is administered by the Compensation Committee. The Compensation Committee is authorized to make all determinations with respect to amounts and conditions covering awards. Options are not granted at a price less than fair value on the date of the grant. Except with respect to 5% of the shares available for awards under the 2016 Plan, no award will become exercisable or otherwise forfeitable unless such award has been outstanding for a minimum period of one year from its date of grant.

The following tables summarize the stock option activity and share activity for the Company's 2006 Plan and 2016 Plan, on a combined basis, during fiscal 2017:

#### Stock Option Activity

The following table summarizes stock option activity under the plans for fiscal 2017:

	Number of Shares	Weighted-average exercise price per option	Weighted-average remaining contractual term	Aggregate intrinsic value
<b>Stock Options</b>				
Outstanding options at beginning of year	2,524,546	\$ 4.98		
Options granted	30,000	\$ 1.85		
Options canceled	(1,358,636)	\$ 5.04		
Options exercised	—	—		
Outstanding options at end of year	1,195,910	\$ 4.80	4.4 years	\$ 21,750
Options exercisable at end of year	1,175,910	\$ 4.85	4.4 years	\$ 7,250
Vested and expected to vest at end of year	1,195,910	\$ 4.80	4.4 years	\$ 21,750

There were no exercises of options during fiscal 2017 or fiscal 2016.

#### Non-Vested Share Activity

The following table summarizes activity for non-vested shares under the plans for fiscal 2017:

	Restricted shares	Restricted Stock Units (1)	Deferred shares (2)	Fully-vested shares (3)	Total number of shares	Weighted-average grant-date fair value (4)
<b>Shares</b>						
Outstanding non-vested shares at beginning of year	856,332	369,828	64,876	—	1,291,036	\$ 5.09
Shares granted	484,558	838,546	100,554	86,503	1,510,161	\$ 2.64
Shares vested/issued	(447,003)	(42,453)	(49,973)	(86,503)	(625,932)	\$ 2.71
Shares canceled	(857,221)	(117,369)	—	—	(974,590)	\$ 4.87
Outstanding non-vested shares at end of year	36,666	1,048,552	115,457	—	1,200,675	\$ 3.43
Vested and expected to vest at end of year	36,666	891,269	115,457	—	1,043,392	

- (1) Restricted Stock Units ("RSU"s) were primarily granted in connection with the time-vested portion of the 2017-2018 LTIP. The RSUs vest in two tranches with the first 50% vesting on April 1, 2019 and the remaining vesting 50% on April 1, 2020.
- (2) The 100,554 shares of deferred stock, with a fair value of approximately \$232,064, represent compensation to certain directors in lieu of cash, in accordance with their irrevocable elections. The shares of deferred stock vest three years from the date of grant or at separation of service, based on the irrevocable election of each director.
- (3) During fiscal 2017, the Company granted 86,503 shares of stock, with a fair value of approximately \$204,477 to certain directors as compensation in lieu of cash, in accordance with their irrevocable elections. Directors are required to elect 50% of their quarterly retainer in equity. Any shares in excess of the minimum required election are issued from the Third Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Stock Purchase Plan (the "Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan").
- (4) The fair value of a restricted share, deferred share and fully-vested share is equal to the Company's closing stock price on the date of grant.

Total unrecognized stock compensation of \$1.8 million at February 3, 2018 is expected to be recognized over a weighted-average period of 20 months.

## Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan

In January 2010, the Company established a Non-Employee Director Stock Purchase Plan to provide a convenient method for its non-employee directors to acquire shares of the Company's common stock at fair market value by voluntarily electing to receive shares of common stock in lieu of cash for service as a director. The substance of this plan is now encompassed within the Company's Third Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan.

Beginning in fiscal 2015, the non-employee directors are required to take 50% of their annual retainer, which is paid quarterly, in equity. Any shares of stock, deferred stock or stock options issued to a director as part of this 50% requirement are issued from the 2016 Plan. Only discretionary elections of equity will be issued from the Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan.

The following shares of common stock, with the respective fair value, were issued to its non-employee directors as compensation for fiscal 2017, fiscal 2016 and fiscal 2015:

	<u>Number of shares of common stock issued</u>	<u>Fair value of common stock issued</u>
Fiscal 2017	42,450	\$ 96,856
Fiscal 2016	14,509	\$ 68,456
Fiscal 2015	24,947	\$ 127,734

## **H. RELATED PARTIES**

### ***Seymour Holtzman and Jewelcor Management, Inc.***

Seymour Holtzman, the Executive Chairman of the Company's Board of Directors (the "Board"), is the chairman, chief executive officer and president and, together with his wife, indirectly, the majority shareholder of Jewelcor Management, Inc. ("JMI"). Mr. Holtzman, who was initially appointed Chairman of the Board in April 2000, is the beneficial holder of approximately 9.2% of the outstanding common stock of the Company at February 3, 2018.

On August 7, 2014, the Company entered into an Employment and Chairman Compensation Agreement (the "Compensation Agreement") with Mr. Holtzman. Pursuant to the terms of the agreement, Mr. Holtzman serves as both an employee of the Company, reporting to the Board, and, in his capacity as Chairman of the Board, as Executive Chairman, with the duties of the Chairman of the Board as set forth in the Company's Fourth Amended and Restated By-Laws. The initial term of the agreement was for two years. Commencing August 7, 2015, on each anniversary date, the agreement automatically extends for an additional one-year term. Accordingly, the current expiration date of the agreement is August 7, 2019.

Effective May 4, 2017, the Compensation Agreement was amended to reduce Mr. Holtzman's annual compensation for his services as Executive Chairman from \$372,750 to \$200,000. Mr. Holtzman continues to receive an annual base salary of \$24,000 for his service as an employee of the Company, reporting to the Board. No other changes to the Employment and Chairman Compensation Agreement were made.

### ***Oliver Walsh***

Oliver Walsh was elected as a director at the Company's Annual Meeting of Stockholders on August 3, 2017. On August 17, 2017, Mr. Walsh entered into a temporary consulting agreement with the Company to serve as the Interim Chief Marketing Officer through the Fall and Holiday selling seasons, while the Company searched for a Chief Marketing Officer. Pursuant to the terms of the temporary consulting agreement, Mr. Walsh was entitled to receive compensation at a rate of \$7,000 per week plus reimbursement for all business and travel expenses. Because of the related party relationship, the temporary consulting agreement was approved by the Company's Audit Committee. The temporary consulting agreement ended on December 18, 2017. For fiscal 2017, Mr. Walsh received total compensation pursuant to the temporary consulting agreement, excluding reimbursement of expenses, of \$130,400.

## **I. EMPLOYEE BENEFIT PLANS**

The Company accounts for its employee benefit plans in accordance with ASC Topic 715 *Compensation – Retirement Benefits*. ASC Topic 715 requires an employer to: (a) recognize in its statement of financial position an asset for a plan's over-funded status or a liability for a plan's under-funded status; (b) measure a plan's assets and its obligations that determine its funded status as of the end of the employer's fiscal year (with limited exceptions); and (c) recognize changes in the funded status of a defined benefit postretirement plan in the year in which the changes occur.

These amounts will be subsequently recognized as net periodic pension cost pursuant to the Company's historical accounting policy for amortizing such amounts. Further, actuarial gains and losses that arise in subsequent periods and are not recognized as net periodic pension cost in the same periods will be recognized as a component of accumulated other comprehensive income (loss). The amortization of the unrecognized loss included in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) and expected to be recognized in net periodic pension cost in fiscal 2018 is approximately \$699,000.

### ***Noncontributory Pension Plan***

In connection with the Casual Male acquisition in May 2002, the Company assumed the assets and liabilities of the Casual Male Noncontributory Pension Plan "Casual Male Corp. Retirement Plan", which was previously known as the J. Baker, Inc. Qualified Plan (the "Pension Plan"). Casual Male Corp. froze all future benefits under this plan on May 1, 1997.

The following table sets forth the Pension Plan's funded status at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017:

	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017
	<i>in thousands</i>	
<b><u>Change in benefit obligation:</u></b>		
Balance at beginning of period	\$ 16,456	\$ 16,845
Benefits and expenses paid	(775)	(733)
Interest costs	641	686
Settlements	(410)	(346)
Actuarial loss	372	4
Balance at end of year	<u>\$ 16,284</u>	<u>\$ 16,456</u>
<b><u>Change in fair value of plan assets:</u></b>		
Balance at beginning of period	\$ 11,734	\$ 11,969
Actual return on plan assets	1,720	844
Employer contributions	586	—
Settlements	(410)	(346)
Benefits and expenses paid	(775)	(733)
Balance at end of period	<u>\$ 12,855</u>	<u>\$ 11,734</u>
<b><u>Reconciliation of Funded Status</u></b>		
Projected benefit obligation	\$ 16,284	\$ 16,456
Fair value of plan assets	12,855	11,734
Unfunded Status	\$ (3,429)	\$ (4,722)
<b><u>Balance Sheet Classification</u></b>		
Other long-term liabilities	\$ 3,429	\$ 4,722

Total plan expense and other amounts recognized in accumulated other comprehensive loss for the years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016 include the following components:

	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017	January 30, 2016
<u>Net pension cost:</u>			
	<i>(in thousands)</i>		
Interest cost on projected benefit obligation	\$ 641	\$ 686	\$ 634
Expected return on plan assets	(813)	(927)	(1,013)
Amortization of unrecognized loss	842	946	1,026
Net pension cost	<u>\$ 670</u>	<u>\$ 705</u>	<u>\$ 647</u>
<u>Other changes recognized in other comprehensive loss, before taxes:</u>			
Unrecognized losses at the beginning of the year	\$ 7,280	\$ 8,139	\$ 9,746
Net periodic pension cost	(670)	(705)	(647)
Employer contribution	586	—	146
Change in plan assets and benefit obligations	(1,293)	(154)	(1,106)
Unrecognized losses at the end of year	<u>\$ 5,903</u>	<u>\$ 7,280</u>	<u>\$ 8,139</u>

The Company's contribution for fiscal 2018 is estimated to be approximately \$628,000.

Assumptions used to determine the benefit obligations as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017 include a discount rate of 3.68% for fiscal 2017 and 4.00% for fiscal 2016. Assumptions used to determine the net periodic benefit cost for the years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016 included a discount rate of 3.68% for fiscal 2017, 4.00% for fiscal 2016 and 4.16% for fiscal 2015.

The expected long-term rate of return for plan assets was assumed to be 7.00% for fiscal 2017 and 8.00% for fiscal 2016. The expected long-term rate of return assumption was developed considering historical and future expectations for returns for each asset class.

#### Estimated Future Benefit Payments

The estimated future benefits for the next ten fiscal years are as follows:

FISCAL YEAR	<u>Total</u>
	<i>(in thousands)</i>
2018	\$ 857
2019	878
2020	936
2021	961
2022	980
2023-2027	5,048
	<u>\$ 9,660</u>

## Plan Assets

The fair values of the Company's noncontributory defined benefit retirement plan assets at the end of fiscal 2017 and fiscal 2016, by asset category, were as follows:

(in thousands)	Fair Value Measurement							
	February 3, 2018				January 28, 2017			
	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total	Quoted Prices in Active Markets for Identical Assets (Level 1)	Significant Observable Inputs (Level 2)	Significant Unobservable Inputs (Level 3)	Total
<b>Asset category:</b>								
<b>Common Stock :</b>								
U.S.	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 2,645	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 2,645
Foreign	—	—	—	—	210	—	—	210
<b>Mutual Funds:</b>								
U.S. Equity	4,789	—	—	4,789	2,153	—	—	2,153
International Equity	3,662	—	—	3,662	2,039	—	—	2,039
Bond	4,074	—	—	4,074	4,418	—	—	4,418
Real Estate Investment Trust	-	—	—	—	6	—	—	6
Cash	330	—	—	330	263	—	—	263
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 12,855</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ 12,855</b>	<b>\$ 11,734</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ —</b>	<b>\$ 11,734</b>

The Company's target asset allocation for fiscal 2018 and its asset allocation at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017 were as follows, by asset category:

<u>Asset category:</u>	Target Allocation Fiscal 2018	Percentage of plan assets at	
		February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017
Equity securities	60.0%	65.7%	60.1%
Debt securities	38.0%	31.7%	37.7%
Cash	2.0%	2.6%	2.2%
<b>Total</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>100.0%</b>	<b>100.0%</b>

The target policy is set to maximize returns with consideration to the long-term nature of the obligations and maintaining a lower level of overall volatility through the allocation of fixed income. The asset allocation is reviewed throughout the year for adherence to the target policy and is rebalanced periodically towards the target weights.

### Supplemental Executive Retirement Plan

In connection with the Casual Male acquisition, the Company also assumed the liability of the Casual Male Supplemental Retirement Plan (the "SERP").

The following table sets forth the SERP's funded status at February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017:

	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017
	<i>in thousands</i>	
<b><u>Change in benefit obligation:</u></b>		
Balance at beginning of period	\$ 652	\$ 670
Benefits and expenses paid	(32)	(30)
Interest costs	25	27
Actuarial gain	(115)	(15)
Balance at end of year	<u>\$ 530</u>	<u>\$ 652</u>
<b><u>Change in fair value of plan assets</u></b>		
Balance at beginning of period	\$ —	\$ —
Employer contributions	32	30
Benefits and expenses paid	(32)	(30)
Balance at end of period	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
Projected benefit obligation	\$ 530	\$ 652
<b><u>Reconciliation of Funded Status</u></b>		
Projected benefit obligation	\$ 530	\$ 652
Fair value of plan assets	—	—
Unfunded Status	<u>\$ (530)</u>	<u>\$ (652)</u>
<b><u>Balance Sheet Classification</u></b>		
Other long-term liabilities	\$ 530	\$ 652

**Other changes recognized in other comprehensive loss, before taxes (in thousands):**

	February 3, 2018	January 28, 2017	January 30, 2016
	<i>in thousands</i>		
<b><u>Other changes recognized in other comprehensive loss, before taxes:</u></b>			
Unrecognized losses at the beginning of the year	\$ 157	\$ 178	\$ 256
Net periodic pension cost	(30)	(33)	(34)
Employer contribution	32	30	30
Change in benefit obligations	(122)	(18)	(74)
Unrecognized losses at the end of year	<u>\$ 37</u>	<u>\$ 157</u>	<u>\$ 178</u>

Assumptions used to determine the benefit obligations as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017 included a discount rate of 3.60% for fiscal 2017 and 4.00% for fiscal 2016. Assumptions used to determine the net periodic benefit cost for the years ended February 3, 2018, January 28, 2017 and January 30, 2016 included a discount rate of 3.60% for fiscal 2017, 4.00% for fiscal 2016 and 4.16% for fiscal 2015.

***Defined Contribution Plan***

The Company has one defined contribution plan, the Destination XL Group, Inc. 401(k) Savings Plan (the "401(k) Plan"). Under the 401(k) Plan, the Company offers a qualified automatic contribution arrangement ("QACA") with the Company matching 100% of the first 1% of deferred compensation and 50% of the next 5% (with a maximum contribution of 3.5% of eligible compensation). As of January 1, 2015, employees who are 21 years of age or older are eligible to make deferrals after 6 months of employment and are eligible to receive a Company match after one year of employment and 1,000 hours.

The Company recognized \$2.3 million, \$2.2 million and \$2.0 million of expense under this plan in fiscal 2017, 2016 and 2015, respectively.

## J. SELECTED QUARTERLY DATA (UNAUDITED)

(Certain columns may not foot due to rounding.)

	FIRST QUARTER	SECOND QUARTER	THIRD QUARTER	FOURTH QUARTER	FULL YEAR
<i>(In Thousands, Except Per Share Data)</i>					
<b>FISCAL YEAR 2017</b>					
Sales	\$ 107,629	\$ 121,125	\$ 103,700	\$ 135,522	\$ 467,976
Gross profit	48,688	55,817	44,813	61,039	210,357
Operating income (loss)	(5,234)	(2,872)	(4,835)	(5,100)	(18,041)
Loss before taxes	(6,036)	(3,696)	(5,706)	(5,960)	(21,398)
Income tax provision (benefit)	29	35	—	(2,636)	(2,572)
Net loss	\$ (6,065)	\$ (3,731)	\$ (5,706)	\$ (3,324)	\$ (18,826)
Loss per share – basic and diluted	\$ (0.12)	\$ (0.08)	\$ (0.12)	\$ (0.07)	\$ (0.39)
<b>FISCAL YEAR 2016</b>					
Sales	\$ 107,891	\$ 117,875	\$ 101,871	\$ 122,646	\$ 450,283
Gross profit	49,766	54,843	45,238	55,034	204,881
Operating income (loss)	1,055	1,017	(3,639)	2,544	977
Income (loss) before taxes	271	234	(4,418)	1,823	(2,090)
Income tax provision	57	35	34	40	166
Net income (loss)	\$ 214	\$ 199	\$ (4,452)	\$ 1,783	\$ (2,256)
Earnings (loss) per share – basic and diluted	\$ 0.00	\$ 0.00	\$ (0.09)	\$ 0.04	\$ (0.05)

The Company's fiscal quarters are based on a retail cycle of 13 weeks. Fiscal 2017 was a 53-week year, therefore, the fourth quarter of fiscal 2017 was a 14-week period. Historically, and consistent with the retail industry, the Company has experienced seasonal fluctuations as it relates to its operating income and net income. Traditionally, a significant portion of the Company's operating income and net income is generated in the fourth quarter, as a result of the holiday selling season.

## K. SUBSEQUENT EVENT

On March 23, 2018, the Company announced that David Levin, President and Chief Executive Officer, has informed the board of directors of his plan to retire as President, CEO and director of the Company by the end of 2018.

In connection with this announcement, the Company and Mr. Levin have entered in a Transition Agreement ("Transition Agreement") addressing Mr. Levin's future retirement and related successor issues. The Transition Agreement modifies and supplements certain terms of Mr. Levin's existing employment agreement with the Company ("Employment Agreement"), which currently provides for an employment term for Mr. Levin running through December 31, 2019.

Under the terms of the Transition Agreement Mr. Levin will continue to serve as Chief Executive Officer until the earlier of December 31, 2018 or the date that the Company employs a full-time successor Chief Executive Officer (the "Transition Date"). As of the Transition Date, Mr. Levin will resign and retire as President and Chief Executive Officer and as a Director of the Company. After the Transition Date and through December 31, 2019, Mr. Levin shall remain employed by the Company to perform reasonable transition duties or other consulting activities or projects, unless his employment is terminated as provided for in the Employment Agreement. If the Company employs a new Chief Executive Officer prior to December 31, 2018, Mr. Levin may elect to terminate his employment for "good reason" within ten days and will receive the payments provided for under the Employment Agreement as a result of such separation. Apart from this time period, Mr. Levin has no other opportunity to terminate his employment for "good reason."

If Mr. Levin remains employed after the Transition Date, he will perform transition duties and projects as requested through December 31, 2019 and continue to receive all compensation otherwise due him under the Employment Agreement. With respect to his ongoing employment through December 31, 2019, payments associated with Mr. Levin's incentive awards for the fiscal year ending February 2, 2019 will be based on actual performance results and payments associated with his incentive awards for the fiscal year ending February 1, 2020 will be paid at target (regardless of actual performance). If there is a change in control of the Company while Mr. Levin remains employed, payments that would have otherwise been due him through December 31, 2019 shall be paid to him in a lump sum (with a limited gross up). So long as Mr. Levin remains employed through December 31, 2019 the vesting of his outstanding long term incentive awards will be treated based on the retirement provisions of the applicable plans.

Except as otherwise modified by the Transition Agreement, Mr. Levin remains subject to the provisions of the Employment

Agreement, including various restrictive covenants. The applicable restricted periods associated with those covenants commence on the earlier of December 31, 2018 or when his employment is terminated. Except as addressed in the Transition Agreement, the provisions of the Employment Agreement relating to any termination as a result of disability, death, resignation or with or without cause remain in effect. All payment obligations of the Company remain subject to Mr. Levin executing a general release within thirty days of the execution of the Transition Agreement and again within thirty days of his termination of employment.

**Item 9. Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure**

None.

**Item 9A. Controls and Procedures**

***Management's Conclusions Regarding the Effectiveness of Disclosure Controls and Procedures***

As required by Rule 13a-15 under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"), our management, under the supervision and with the participation of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer, evaluated the effectiveness of our disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e) under the Exchange Act) as of February 3, 2018. Based on this evaluation, our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer concluded that, as of February 3, 2018, our disclosure controls and procedures were effective.

***Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting***

Our management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) under the Exchange Act. Our internal control over financial reporting is a process designed under the supervision of our Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. Our internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that:

- (i) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of our assets;
- (ii) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that our receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our management and directors; and
- (iii) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

There are inherent limitations in the effectiveness of any internal control, including the possibility of human error and the circumvention or overriding of controls. Accordingly, even effective internal controls can provide only reasonable assurances with respect to financial statement preparation. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

Management assessed the design and effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018. In making this assessment, management used the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) in Internal Control- Integrated Framework (2013).

Based on management's assessment and the above mentioned criteria, management determined that we maintained effective internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018.

KPMG, LLP, our independent registered public accounting firm, has issued an audit report on our internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018, which appears below.

## REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Stockholders and Board of Directors  
Destination XL Group, Inc.:

### *Opinion on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*

We have audited Destination XL Group, Inc. and subsidiaries' (the Company) internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission. In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018, based on criteria established in Internal Control – Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB), the consolidated balance sheets of the Company as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive income (loss), changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 3, 2018, and the related notes (collectively, the consolidated financial statements), and our report dated March 23, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion on those consolidated financial statements.

### *Basis for Opinion*

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management's Annual Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit of internal control over financial reporting included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, and testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk. Our audit also included performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

### *Definition and Limitations of Internal Control Over Financial Reporting*

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Boston, Massachusetts  
March 23, 2018

***Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting***

No change in our internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f) under the Exchange Act) occurred during the fiscal quarter ended February 3, 2018 that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

***Item 9B. Other Information.***

None.

### PART III.

Pursuant to Paragraph G(3) of the General Instructions to Form 10-K, the information required by Part III (Items 10, 11, 12, 13 and 14) is being incorporated by reference herein from our definitive proxy statement (or an amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K) to be filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018 in connection with our 2018 Annual Meeting of Stockholders.

#### **Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance**

Information with respect to this item is incorporated by reference from our definitive proxy statement (or amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K) to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018.

#### **Item 11. Executive Compensation**

Information with respect to this item is incorporated by reference from our definitive proxy statement (or amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K) to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018.

#### **Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Stockholder Matters**

Information with respect to this item is incorporated by reference from our definitive proxy statement (or amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K) to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018.

#### **Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence**

Information with respect to this item is incorporated by reference from our definitive proxy statement (or amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K) to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018.

#### **Item 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services**

Information with respect to this item is incorporated by reference from our definitive proxy statement (or amendment to this Annual Report on Form 10-K) to be filed with the SEC within 120 days of the end of the fiscal year ended February 3, 2018.

**PART IV.**

**Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules**

**15(a)(1) Financial Statements**

The list of consolidated financial statements and notes required by this Item 15(a)(1) is set forth in the “Index to Consolidated Financial Statements” on page 39 of this Annual Report.

**15(a)(2) Financial Statement Schedules**

All schedules have been omitted because the required information is not applicable or is not present in amounts sufficient to require submission of the schedules, or because the information required is included in the financial statements or notes thereto.

**15(a)(3) Exhibits**

The list of exhibits required by this Item 15(a)(3) is set forth in the “Index to Exhibits” beginning on page 73 of this Annual Report.

**Item 16. Form 10-K Summary**

Omitted at registrant’s option.

## Index to Exhibits

### Exhibits

- |       |   |    |
|-------|---|----|
| 3.1   | <a href="#"><u>Restated Certificate of Incorporation of the Company (conformed copy incorporating all amendments through February 25, 2013) (included as Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   |    |
| 3.2   | <a href="#"><u>Fourth Amended and Restated By-Laws (included as Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 18, 2015, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>  |    |
| 10.1  | <a href="#"><u>Company's 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan, as amended (included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 17, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>  | †  |
| 10.2  | <a href="#"><u>Company's 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan, as amended (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 8, 2016, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   | †  |
| 10.3  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Non-Qualified Option Agreement for Associates (included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   | †  |
| 10.4  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Non-Qualified Option Agreement for Associates (pursuant to the Company's Long-Term Incentive Plan) (included as Exhibit 10.4 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>  | †  |
| 10.5  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Restricted Stock Agreement for Associates (included as Exhibit 10.5 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   | †  |
| 10.6  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Restricted Stock Agreement for Associates (pursuant to the Company's Long-Term Incentive Plan) (included as Exhibit 10.6 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>  | †  |
| 10.7  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Associates (included as Exhibit 10.7 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>  | †  |
| 10.8  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Restricted Stock Unit Agreement for Associates (pursuant to the Company's Long-Term Incentive Plan) (included as Exhibit 10.8 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   | †  |
| 10.9  | <a href="#"><u>Form of Deferred Stock Award Agreement for Non-Employee Directors (included as Exhibit 10.9 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   | †  |
| 10.10 | <a href="#"><u>Company's Third Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan.</u></a>  | *† |
| 10.11 | <a href="#"><u>Sixth Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement dated November 10, 2010, by and among Bank of America, N.A., as Administrative Agent and Collateral Agent, the Revolving Credit Lenders identified therein, the Company, as Borrowers' Representative, and the Company and CMRG Apparel, LLC, as Borrowers (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K/A filed on January 7, 2011 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>  |    |
| 10.12 | <a href="#"><u>First Amendment to Sixth Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement, First Amendment to Amended and Restated Guaranty, First Amendment to Amended and Restated Security Agreement and Termination Agreement dated June 26, 2013, by and among Bank of America, N.A., as Administrative Agent and Collateral Agent, the Revolving Credit Lenders identified therein, the Company, as Borrowers' Representative, and the Company and CMRG Apparel, LLC, as Borrowers (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 23, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a> |    |
| 10.13 | <a href="#"><u>Second Amendment to Sixth Amended and Restated Loan and Security Agreement dated October 30, 2014, by and among Bank of America, N.A., as Administrative Agent and Collateral Agent, the Revolving Credit Lenders identified therein, the Company, as Borrowers' Representative, and the Company and CMRG Apparel, LLC, as Borrowers (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 21, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>   | ** |

Exhibits

- 10.14 [Master Loan and Security Agreement dated July 20, 2007 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC \(included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on July 23, 2007 \(File No. 001-34219\), and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.15 [Amendment Number 1 to Master Loan and Security Agreement dated September 30, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 3, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.16 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70003 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated October 1, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 3, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.17 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70004 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated September 30, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.4 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 3, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.18 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70005 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated September 30, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.5 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 3, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.19 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70006 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated September 30, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.6 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on October 3, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.20 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70007 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated December 23, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 8, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.21 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70008 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated December 23, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 8, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.22 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70009 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated December 23, 2013 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital, LLC. \(included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 8, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.23 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70010 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated March 28, 2014 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital LLC \(included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 1, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.24 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70011 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated March 28, 2014 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital LLC \(included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 1, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.25 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70012 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated March 28, 2014 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital LLC \(included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on April 1, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.26 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70013 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated June 23, 2014 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital LLC \(included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 26, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)
- 10.27 [Equipment Security Note Number 17608-70014 to the Master Loan and Security Agreement, as amended, dated June 23, 2014 between the Company and Banc of America Leasing & Capital LLC \(included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on June 26, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference\).](#)

Exhibits

10.28	<a href="#"><u>Term Loan and Security Agreement, dated October 29, 2014, by and among Wells Fargo Bank, National Association, as Administrative Agent and Collateral Agent, the Company, as Borrowers' Representative, and the company and CMRG Apparel, LLC, as Borrowers (included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 21, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	**
10.29	<a href="#"><u>Employment and Chairman Compensation Agreement, dated August 7, 2014, between the Company and Seymour Holtzman (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 12, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.30	<a href="#"><u>First Amendment to Employment and Chairman Compensation Agreement, dated May 25, 2017, between the Company and Mr. Holtzman (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on May 30, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.31	<a href="#"><u>Revised and Restated Employment Agreement dated as of November 5, 2009 between the Company and David A. Levin (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on November 19, 2009 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.32	<a href="#"><u>Second Amended and Restated Employment Agreement between the Company and Peter H. Stratton, Jr. dated as of November 27, 2017.</u></a>	*†
10.33	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Robert S. Molloy dated as of January 7, 2010 (included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on January 11, 2010 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.34	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Francis C. Chane dated as of January 8, 2010 (included as Exhibit 10.34 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 19, 2010 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.35	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Kenneth M. Ederle dated as of September 2, 2015 (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 20, 2015, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.36	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Peter E. Schmitz dated as of January 1, 2013 (included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 22, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.37	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Walter E. Sprague dated as of January 8, 2010 (included as Exhibit 10.40 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 19, 2010 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.38	<a href="#"><u>Amended and Restated Employment Agreement between the Company and Brian Reaves dated as of November 27, 2017.</u></a>	*†
10.39	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and John F. Cooney dated as of May 17, 2015 (included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 27, 2015, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.40	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Mary Luttrell effective as of January 18, 2017 (included as Exhibit 10.43 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.41	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Anthony J. Gaeta dated as of November 27, 2017.</u></a>	*†
10.42	<a href="#"><u>Employment Agreement between the Company and Sahal S. Laher effective as of January 30, 2017 (included as Exhibit 10.44 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.43	<a href="#"><u>Temporary Consulting Agreement, effective August 14, 2017, between the Company and Oliver Walsh (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on August 23, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.44	<a href="#"><u>2016 Destination XL Group, Inc. Long-Term Incentive Wrap-Around Plan (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed November 13, 2014, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†

**Exhibits**

10.45	<a href="#"><u>Form of Non-Qualified Stock Option Agreement pursuant to the Company's 2013-2016 Long-Term Incentive Plan (included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 23, 2013, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.46	<a href="#"><u>Company's Third Amended and Restated Annual Incentive Plan (included as Exhibit 10.49 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.47	<a href="#"><u>Company's First Amended and Restated Long-Term Incentive Plan (included as Exhibit 10.50 to the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on March 20, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	†
10.48	<a href="#"><u>Registration Rights Agreement dated November 18, 2003 by and between the Company and Thomas Weisel Partners LLC (included as Exhibit 10.4 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on December 9, 2003 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	
10.49	<a href="#"><u>Letter Agreement between the Company and Prescott Group Capital Management, L.L.C., et al, dated December 6, 2017 (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on December 8, 2017, an incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	
10.50	<a href="#"><u>Letter Agreement, dated January 29, 2014, by and between the Company and Red Mountain Capital Partners LLC (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 17, 2017, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	
10.51	<a href="#"><u>Contribution Agreement dated January 30, 2006 by and among the Company, Spirit SPE Canton, LLC and Spirit Finance Acquisitions, LLC (included as Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 3, 2006 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	
10.52	<a href="#"><u>Membership Interest Purchase Agreement dated January 30, 2006 by and between the Company and Spirit Finance Acquisitions, LLC (included as Exhibit 10.2 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 3, 2006 (File No. 001-34219), and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	
10.53	<a href="#"><u>Lease Agreement dated February 1, 2006 by and between the Company and Spirit SPE Canton, LLC (included as Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on February 3, 2006, and incorporated herein by reference).</u></a>	
21.1	<a href="#"><u>Subsidiaries of the Registrant.</u></a>	*
23.1	<a href="#"><u>Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm.</u></a>	*
31.1	<a href="#"><u>Certification of Chief Executive Officer of the Company pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.</u></a>	*
31.2	<a href="#"><u>Certification of Chief Financial Officer of the Company pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) under the Securities Exchange Act of 1934.</u></a>	*
32.1	<a href="#"><u>Certification of Chief Executive Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</u></a>	*
32.2	<a href="#"><u>Certification of Chief Financial Officer pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002.</u></a>	*
101	The following materials from the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the year ended February 3, 2018, formatted in XBRL (eXtensible Business Reporting Language): (i) Consolidated Balance Sheets, (ii) Consolidated Statements of Operations, (iii) Consolidated Statements of Changes in Stockholders' Equity, (iv) Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income, (v) Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows, and (vi) Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements.	*

\* Filed herewith.

\*\* Portions of this Exhibit have been omitted pursuant to a grant of confidential treatment.

† Denotes management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement.



DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.  
THIRD AMENDED AND RESTATED  
NON-EMPLOYEE DIRECTOR COMPENSATION PLAN

Section 1. Establishment and Purpose

Destination XL Group, Inc. (the “Company”) hereby amends and restates the Destination XL Group, Inc. Second Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan (as amended, the “Plan”), for the purpose of supporting the Company’s ongoing efforts to attract and retain exceptional directors to provide strategic guidance to the Company. The Plan also provides a convenient method by which non-employee directors of the Company may acquire shares of Common Stock of the Company (“Shares”) at fair market value by voluntarily electing to receive Shares in lieu of fees otherwise payable to them in cash for service as a director or member of a committee of the Board of Directors of the Company (the “Board”). The Board may, from time to time, by resolution, require each Participant to elect to receive a specified percentage of all or any portion of the Participant’s Compensation hereunder in some form of equity in the Company, that is, Shares, Options or Deferred Stock (“Required Equity”). In addition, each Participant, at his/her discretion, will be able to elect to receive Shares, Options or Deferred Stock for any remaining portion of Compensation. Any Shares acquired by a Participant pursuant to this Plan as part of any Required Equity shall come from the Incentive Compensation Plan. Any Shares acquired by a Participant pursuant to this Plan other than as part of any Required Equity (i.e., pursuant to discretionary elections) shall come out of the pool of Shares reserved for issuance under Section 4 of this Plan, subject to adjustment as the Board may from time to time determine, and not from the Incentive Compensation Plan. The Plan shall be effective as of November 2, 2017. Elections for fiscal 2018 and thereafter must be submitted to the Company in accordance with Section 3(iii) no later than December 31 of the year preceding the fiscal year for which the election is to be effective.

Section 2. Definitions

When used herein, the following capitalized terms shall have the meanings assigned to them, unless the context clearly indicates otherwise. Capitalized terms used herein and not defined shall have the meanings assigned to them in the Incentive Compensation Plan.

- (a) “Black-Scholes Valuation” means, with respect to an Option, the value of such Option as of the Grant Date calculated utilizing the same formula and assumptions as the Company utilized for the purpose of valuing outstanding options in its most recently (meaning at the time of the valuation) prepared audited annual financial statement.

- (b) “Cash” means U.S. dollars.
- (c) “Commission” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission or any successor agency.
- (d) “Common Stock” means the common stock of the Company, par value \$.01 per share.
- (e) “Compensation” means an award under the Plan that is payable in the form of Cash, Deferred Stock, Options and/or Shares pursuant to the terms and conditions set forth in this Plan.
- (f) “Compensation Payment Choice” means the form of payment of Compensation that a Participant selects in accordance with the terms hereof.
- (g) “Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended from time to time, including rules thereunder and successor provisions and rules thereto.
- (h) “Grant Date” means the following: (i) each quarterly retainer and chairperson fee payable pursuant to Sections 3(i)(a)-(d) hereof shall be paid on, and the Grant Dates shall be, the first business day of each quarter in each fiscal year, (ii) each meeting fee payable pursuant to Sections 3(i)(e) and (f) hereof shall be paid on, and the Grant Date shall be, the last business day of each month in which the applicable meeting occurs, and (iii) the Option grant issued pursuant to Section 3(i)(g) with respect to a Director's initial election to the Board shall be issued on, and the Grant Date shall be, the last business day of the month in which such initial election occurs.
- (i) “Incentive Compensation Plan” means the Company’s 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan, as amended from time to time, or any shareholder-approved successor plan to the Company’s 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan.
- (j) “Irrevocable Election Agreement” means the written agreement, substantially in the form of Exhibit A, between the Company and a Participant, which, together with the Plan, governs the Participant’s rights to payment of Compensation under the Plan.
- (k) “NASDAQ” means The NASDAQ Stock Market, Inc.
- (l) “Non-Employee Director” means a Director who satisfies the requirements set forth in Rule 16b-3(b)(3)(i) under the Exchange Act.

- (m) “Participant” means a Non-Employee Director of the Company.
- (n) “Plan” means this Destination XL Group, Inc. Third Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan, as amended from time to time.
- (o) “Separation from Service” means the earliest date on which a Participant has incurred a separation from service, within the meaning of Section 409A(a)(2) of the Code, with the Service Recipient.
- (p) “Service Recipient” means the Company and all persons with whom the Company would be considered a single employer under Section 414(b) of the Code (employees of a controlled group of corporations), and all persons with whom such person would be considered a single employer under Section 414(c) of the Code (employees of partnerships, proprietorships, or other entities under company control).
- (q) “Treasury Regulations” means the regulations promulgated by the United States Treasury Department with respect to the Code, as amended from time to time.
- (r) “Lead Director” means an independent director whose responsibilities shall include the following and any other responsibilities determined by the Board: (i) presiding at all meetings of the Board at which the Chairman is not present, including executive sessions of the independent directors; (ii) serving as liaison between the Chairman and the independent directors; (iii) reviewing and approving materials to be sent to the Board; (iv) approving the meeting agendas for the Board; (v) approving meeting schedules to assure that there is sufficient time for discussion of all agenda items; (vi) having the authority to call meetings of the independent directors; and (vii) if requested by major shareholders, ensuring that he or she is available for consultation and direct communication. If the Chairman of the Board is an independent director, then the foregoing responsibilities will be handled by the Chairman.

Section 3. Compensation; Irrevocable Election; Valuation.

- (i) The Compensation paid to the Participants shall be as follows:
  - (a) a retainer equal to \$25,562.50 per fiscal quarter (paid only to those Participants serving as a Director as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable);
  - (b) to the chairperson of the Company’s audit committee, a fee equal to \$2,500 per fiscal quarter (paid only to the Participant serving in such position as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable);

- (c) to the chairperson of the Company's compensation committee, a fee equal to \$1,250 per fiscal quarter (paid only to the Participant serving in such position as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable);
- (d) to the chairperson of the Company's nominating and corporate governance committee, a fee equal to \$1,250 per fiscal quarter (paid only to the Participant serving in such position as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable);
- (e) \$1,500 per meeting for his/her attendance at in-person meetings of the Board and committees;
- (f) \$750 per meeting for his/her attendance at telephonic meetings of the Board and committees;
- (g) Options to purchase 15,000 shares of the Company's common stock upon initial election to the Board;
- (h) to the chairperson of the Company's cybersecurity and data privacy committee, a fee equal to \$1,250 per fiscal quarter (paid only to the Participant serving in such position as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable);
- (i) to the Lead Director, a fee equal to \$4,500 per fiscal quarter (paid only to the Participant serving in such position as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable);
- (j) to the chairperson of the Company's marketing strategy committee, a fee equal to \$1,250 per fiscal quarter (paid only to the Participant serving in such position as of the Grant Date in the fiscal quarter for which the fee is payable).

(ii) Subject to the terms hereof, Compensation shall be paid on the applicable Grant Date unless the Participant elects to receive Deferred Stock. The Participants will have the right to elect payments of the values set forth above in any combination of Cash, Shares, Deferred Stock or Options; provided that (i) Compensation paid in the form of Options and/or Deferred Stock, as well as Compensation paid in the form of Shares as part of any Required Equity, shall be made pursuant to the Incentive Compensation Plan, and can only be made in such form if there is a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock available under the Incentive Compensation Plan; and (ii) Compensation paid in the form of Shares, at the Participant's discretion and not part of any Required Equity, shall be made pursuant to this Plan, and can only be made in such form if there is a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock available under this Plan. In the event that the Company does not have a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock remaining under the

Incentive Compensation Plan to satisfy elections to receive Options and/or Deferred Stock and/or Shares that are part of any Required Equity, the payments will be made in Cash to the extent of such insufficiency (Participants making similar elections will be allocated the remaining equity ratably in proportion to the respective equity amounts which would otherwise be payable to them absent such insufficiency). In the event that the Company does not have a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock remaining under this Plan to satisfy discretionary elections to receive Shares, the payments will be made in Cash to the extent of such insufficiency (Participants making similar elections will be allocated the remaining equity ratably in proportion to the respective equity amounts which would otherwise be payable to them absent such insufficiency). In the event a Participant elects to receive Deferred Stock, then on the Grant Date, the Participant shall receive a Deferred Stock Award and, when the deferral period expires, payment shall be made in shares of Common Stock.

(iii) The elections by the Participants must be made in writing substantially in the form of Exhibit A attached hereto and submitted to the General Counsel of the Company (or such other person as the Committee shall designate) no later than December 31<sup>st</sup> of the year preceding the fiscal year for which the election is to be effective. All elections (including elections to receive Deferred Stock), once submitted, are irrevocable for that fiscal year. In the event a timely election is not made or a person does not become a Participant until after the deadline for the election to be made or who becomes a Participant during a fiscal year, the payments will be made in cash for that fiscal year except for Required Equity which shall be paid in Shares.

(iv) Valuation of Shares. For the purposes of determining the number of Shares to be issued to a Participant on a Grant Date, each Share shall be assigned a value equal to the consolidated closing bid price of a share of Common Stock as reported by NASDAQ on the effective Grant Date. Any Shares granted pursuant to this Plan shall be fully vested on the Grant Date. Payouts of Shares under the Plan will be in the form of whole Shares only; the *de minimis* balance of any foregone fees not payable in whole Shares will not be paid.

(v) Valuation of Options and/or Deferred Stock. For the purposes of determining the relative values of Deferred Stock and Options, each share of Deferred Stock shall be assigned a value equal to the consolidated closing price of a share of the Common Stock as reported by NASDAQ on the effective Grant Date and each Option to acquire a share of Common Stock shall be assigned a value equal to the Black-Scholes value of an option to acquire a share of Common Stock on the effective Grant Date with an exercise price equal to the closing sale price of a share of Common Stock as reported on a consolidated basis by NASDAQ on such Grant Date. Any Options issued pursuant to the foregoing shall vest in increments of one-third on the effective

Grant Date, one-third on the first anniversary of the effective Grant Date and one-third on the second anniversary of the effective Grant Date. Unless the Board otherwise determines in its sole discretion, any unexercised portion of vested Options shall be exercisable for 10 years after the Grant Date, except in the event of Separation from Service, where vested Options shall automatically terminate: (i) immediately if for cause; (ii) three months if for a reason other than for cause/disability/death; (iii) twelve months if by reason of a Disability; and (iv) (a) twelve months if by reason of death or, if later, (b) three months after the date which the Participant dies if death occurs during the one year period due to Disability. Any Deferred Stock granted pursuant to this Plan shall be fully vested on the Grant Date.

(v) Except in the event of a Change in Control, all unvested Options to which a Participant would otherwise be entitled shall be forfeited immediately upon the Participant's Separation from Service except as may otherwise be determined by the Board in writing in its sole discretion.

(vi) If a Participant elects to receive Deferred Stock, the Participant shall receive delivery of the Shares so deferred within 30 days after the earlier of (a) the third, fourth, or fifth anniversary of the Grant Date, as irrevocably elected by the Participant pursuant to Section 3 (iii) above, or (b) the Participant's Separation from Service. If a Participant fails to elect an anniversary of the Date of Grant under the preceding sentence upon which to receive delivery of the Deferred Stock, then delivery of such Deferred Stock shall be made within 30 days after the Participant's Separation from Service. Notwithstanding the foregoing, if a Participant is a "specified employee", as that term is defined in Section 409A(a)(2)(B)(i) of the Code, then no payment or benefit that is payable on account of the Participant's Separation from Service shall be made before the date that is six months after the Participant's separation from service (or, if earlier, the date of the Participant's death) if and to the extent that such payment or benefit constitutes deferred compensation (or may be nonqualified deferred compensation) under Section 409A and such deferral is required to comply with the requirements of Section 409A.

Section 4. Number of Shares Under the Plan. Subject to adjustment as the Board may from time to time determine, the total number of Shares reserved and available under the Plan with respect to discretionary elections to receive Shares in lieu of fees shall initially be 500,000, as adjusted for any stock dividends, combinations, splits, recapitalizations and the like with respect to the Common Stock.

#### Section 5. Change in Control.

If and to the extent that it would not violate the requirements of Section 409A of the Code, in the event of a Change in Control prior to, or concurrently with, a Participant's Separation from Service, the full value of the Participant's unpaid or unvested Compensation shall immediately vest and, in the case of any Deferred Stock Award, shall be paid as soon as administratively practicable after, and in all events within 30 days after, the Change of Control.

#### Section 6. No Acceleration of Benefits

In no event shall the acceleration of the time or schedule of any payment under the Plan be permitted, except to the extent permitted under Section 409A of the Code and the Treasury Regulations and other applicable guidance issued thereunder.

#### Section 7. Amendment and Termination

This Plan may be amended or terminated in any respect at any time by the Board; provided, however, that no amendment or termination of the Plan shall be effective to reduce any benefits that accrue and are vested before the adoption of such amendment or termination. If and to the extent permitted without violating the requirements of Section 409A of the Code, the Committee may require that the Compensation of all Participants be paid in cash as soon as practicable after such termination, notwithstanding any elections by Participants with regard to the timing or form in which their benefits are to be paid. If and to the extent that the Committee does not accelerate the timing of payments on account of the termination of the Plan pursuant to the preceding sentence, payment of any remaining benefits under the Plan shall be made at the same times and in the same manner as such payments would have been made based upon the most recent elections made by Participants, and the terms of the Plan, as in effect at the time the Plan is terminated.

#### Section 8. Unfunded Obligation

The obligations of the Company to pay any Compensation under the Plan shall be unfunded and unsecured, and any payments under the Plan shall be made from the general assets of the Company. Participants' rights under the Plan are not assignable or transferable except to the extent that such assignment or transfer is permitted under the terms of the Incentive Compensation Plan (regardless of the fact that not all forms of payment hereunder are being made under the Incentive Compensation Plan).

## Section 9. Withholding

The Participants and personal representatives shall bear any and all federal, state, local or other taxes imposed on benefits under the Plan. The Company may deduct from any payments under the Plan the amount of any taxes required to be withheld from such payments by any federal, state or local government, and may deduct from any Compensation or other amounts payable to the Participant the amount of any taxes required to be withheld with respect to any other amounts under the Plan by any federal, state or local government.

## Section 10. Applicable Law

This Plan shall be construed and enforced in accordance with the laws of the State of Delaware, except to the extent superseded by federal law.

## Section 11. Administration and Interpretation

The Plan will be administered by the Committee. The Committee shall not make any substantive changes to the Compensation set forth in this Plan without the approval of the Board. The Committee will have broad authority to adopt rules and regulations relating to the Plan and make decisions and interpretations regarding the provisions of the Plan. Benefits due and owing to a Participant under the Plan shall be paid when due without any requirement that a claim for benefits be filed. However, any Participant who has not received the benefits to which Participant believes himself or herself entitled may file a written claim with the Committee, which shall act on the claim within thirty days. Any decisions or interpretations by the Committee relating to benefits under the Plan shall be binding and conclusive on all affected parties.

## Section 12. Code Section 409A

It is intended that the Compensation granted pursuant to this Plan other than any Deferred Stock Awards, be exempt from Section 409A of the Code ("Section 409A") because it is believed (i) the Compensation payable in cash should qualify for the short-term deferral exception contained in Treasury Regulation §1.409A-1(b)(4), and (ii) any Options granted pursuant to the Plan will have an exercise price that may never be less than the Fair Market Value of a Share on the Grant Date and the other requirements for the exemption of such options under Treasury Regulation §1.409A-1(b)(5)(i)(A) should be met. It also is intended that any compensation payable in the form of a Deferred Stock Award comply with the requirements of Section 409A. The provisions of the Plan shall be interpreted in a manner consistent with the foregoing intentions.

The Committee, in its sole discretion, and without the consent of any Participant or Beneficiary, may amend the provisions of this Plan to the extent that the Committee determines that such amendment is necessary or appropriate in order for the Compensation paid pursuant to the Plan to be exempt from the requirements of Section 409A, or if and to that the Committee determines that the Compensation is not so exempt, to amend the Plan (and any agreements relating to any Compensation) in such manner as the Committee determines shall deem necessary or appropriate to comply with the requirements of Section 409A.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company does not make any representation to any Participant or Beneficiary that the Compensation paid pursuant to this Plan is exempt from, or satisfies, the requirements of Section 409A, and the Company shall have no liability or other obligation to indemnify or hold harmless any Participant or Beneficiary for any tax, additional tax, interest or penalties that the Participant or Beneficiary may incur in the event that any provision of the Plan or any Compensation agreement, or any amendment or any modification thereof, or any other action taken with respect thereto, is deemed to violate any of the requirements of Section 409A.

**THIS SPACE IS LEFT BLANK INTENTIONALLY**

**EXHIBIT A**  
**DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.**  
**THIRD AMENDED AND RESTATED NON-EMPLOYEE DIRECTOR COMPENSATION PLAN**  
**IRREVOCABLE ELECTION AGREEMENT**

TO: General Counsel:

I, \_\_\_\_\_, hereby elect to receive my Destination XL Group, Inc. Non-Employee Director Compensation (as defined in the Destination XL Group, Inc. Third Amended and Restated Non-Employee Director Compensation Plan (the "Plan")) as follows:

COMPENSATION	PAYMENT CHOICES					If Deferred Stock was elected, specify the anniversary of the Date of Grant on which the Deferral Period will end			
	Cash	DXLG Stock	DXLG Stock Options	DXLG Deferred Stock	TOTAL				
<b>Retainer</b>	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	100%	3rd	4th	5th	SfS**
<b>In-Person Meetings</b>	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	100%	3rd	4th	5th	SfS**
<b>Telephonic Meetings</b>	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	100%	3rd	4th	5th	SfS**
<b>Committee Chair Fee/Lead Independent Director Fee</b>	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	_____ %	100%	3rd	4th	5th	SfS**

\*[Description of Required Equity, if any]. \*\*Separation from Service

[NOTE: You have the opportunity to decide the Compensation Payment Choice(s): cash, DXLG Stock, DXLG stock options or DXLG Deferred Stock for each type of fee. Your selected option(s) for any given year must equal 100%. If you select Deferred Stock, then distribution of your DXLG shares shall be made within 30 days after the earlier of (a) the anniversary of the Date of Grant you elect above and (b) the date of your Separation from Service (or if you become an employee of the Company and are a "specified employee", as defined in the Plan, the 6-month anniversary of the Grant Date). If you do not specify a number of years, distribution will be made upon your Separation from Service.]

I understand and acknowledge that (i) with respect to elections to receive DXLG stock options and/or DXLG Deferred Stock and/or DXL Stock (for Required Equity, if any), if there is an insufficient number of DXLG shares available under the Company's 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan, I will be paid in cash and (ii) with respect to discretionary elections to receive DXLG Stock, if there is an insufficient number of DXLG shares available under the Plan, I will be paid in cash.

I understand and acknowledge that this election is irrevocable. I understand and acknowledge that I must be a director of the Company on the dates each portion of the Compensation is paid in order to qualify for such payment.

I understand and acknowledge that if there is any conflict between this form or any part of it and the Plan, the provisions of the Plan shall govern.

I have hereunto set my hand and seal this \_\_\_\_ day of \_\_\_\_\_, 20\_\_.

\_\_\_\_\_  
 (Signature)  
 MIA 184192812v2

\_\_\_\_\_  
 (Printed name)

**SECOND AMENDED AND RESTATED EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

This Second Amended and Restated Employment Agreement ("Agreement") is made effective as of November 27, 2017 between DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC., a Delaware corporation with an office at 555 Turnpike Street, Canton, Massachusetts, 02021 (the "Company" which term includes any affiliates and subsidiaries), and Peter H. Stratton, Jr. (the "Executive") having an address at 59 Marshall Avenue, Mansfield, MA 02048.

**WITNESSETH:**

WHEREAS, the Company desires that Executive serve as Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer and Executive desires to be so employed by the Company.

WHEREAS, Executive and the Company desire to set forth in writing the terms and conditions of the Executive's employment with the Company from the date hereof.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the promises and the mutual promises, representations and covenants herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

1. **EMPLOYMENT**

The Company hereby employs Executive and Executive hereby accepts such employment, subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth. Executive shall hold the office of Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer.

2. **TERM**

The term of employment under this Agreement (the "Term of Employment") shall begin on the date set forth above (the "Effective Date") and shall continue until terminated by either party as hereinafter set forth.

3. **COMPENSATION**

(a) During the Term of Employment, as compensation for the employment services to be rendered by Executive hereunder, the Company agrees to pay to Executive, and Executive agrees to accept, payable in equal bi-weekly installments in accordance with Company practice, an annual base salary of Three Hundred Ninety-Five Thousand Dollars and 00/100 Cents (\$395,000.00) (the "Base Salary"). The Base Salary shall be reviewed at least annually to ascertain whether, in the judgment of the Company, such Base Salary should be adjusted. If so, the adjusted Base Salary shall be adjusted for all purposes of this Agreement.

(b) In addition to the Base Salary, during the Term of Employment, Executive is eligible to participate in the Company's Annual Incentive Plan. Such incentive shall be determined and payable in accordance with the Company's incentive program in effect at the

---

time, subject to change from year to year in the Company's sole discretion. Executive will participate in the Company's incentive program and, commencing with Fiscal 2018, Executive's target bonus under such plan (if all individual and Company performance conditions are met) shall be 55% of Executive's actual annual base earnings (which shall be the total Base Salary as may be paid during the fiscal year ("Base Earnings")). The actual award under the incentive program, if any, may be more or less than the target and will be based on Executive's performance and the performance of the Company and payment will be made in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of the incentive program then in effect.

(c) In addition, during the Term of Employment, Executive is eligible to participate in the Company's Long Term Incentive Plan ("LTIP"). Such incentive shall be determined and distributable in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions as described in the LTIP documents in effect at the time of the award, subject to change from year to year in the Compensation Committee's sole discretion. Executive will participate in the Company's LTIP at a target incentive rate of 70% of Executive's Base Salary in effect on the Executive's Effective Date of Participation, for the incentive period, based upon the Company's targeted performance as defined in the LTIP documents in effect at the time of the award.

4. EXPENSES

The Company shall pay or reimburse Executive, in accordance with the Company's policies and procedures and upon presentment of suitable vouchers, for all reasonable business and travel expenses, which may be incurred or paid by Executive during the Term of Employment in connection with his employment hereunder. Executive shall comply with such restrictions and shall keep such records as the Company may reasonably deem necessary to meet the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended from time to time, and regulations promulgated thereunder.

5. OTHER BENEFITS

(a) During the Term of Employment, Executive shall be entitled to such vacations and to participate in and receive any other benefits customarily provided by the Company to its management (including any profit sharing, pension, 401(k), short and long-term disability insurance, medical and dental insurance and group life insurance plans in accordance with and subject to the terms of such plans, including, without limitation, any eligibility requirements contained therein), all as determined from time to time by the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors in its discretion.

(b) The Company will, during the Term of Employment, provide Executive with an automobile allowance in the total amount of Eight Thousand Four Hundred Dollars and 00/100 (\$8,400.00) annually, in equal bi-weekly payments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll practices. Executive shall pay and be responsible for all insurance, repairs and maintenance costs associated with operating the automobile. Executive is responsible for his gasoline, unless the gasoline expense is reimbursable under the Company's policies and procedures.

(c) Executive will be eligible to participate in the Company's annual performance appraisal process.

6. DUTIES

(a) Executive shall perform such duties and functions consistent with the position of Executive Vice President, Chief Financial Officer and Treasurer and/or as the Company shall from time to time determine and Executive shall comply in the performance of his duties with the policies of, and be subject to the direction of the Company.

(b) During the Term of Employment, Executive shall devote substantially all of his time and attention, vacation time and absences for sickness excepted, to the business of the Company, as necessary to fulfill his duties. Executive shall perform the duties assigned to him with fidelity and to the best of his ability. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, and subject to the foregoing, Executive shall not be prevented from accepting positions in outside organizations so long as such activities do not interfere with Executive's performance of his duties hereunder and do not violate paragraph 10 hereof.

(c) The principal location at which the Executive shall perform his duties hereunder shall be at the Company's offices in Canton, Massachusetts or at such other location as may be temporarily designated from time to time by the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive shall perform such services at such other locations as may be required for the proper performance of his duties hereunder, and Executive recognizes that such duties may involve travel.

7. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT; EFFECT OF TERMINATION

(a) The Term of Employment may be terminated by the Company at any time:

(i) upon the determination by the Company that Executive's performance of his duties has not been fully satisfactory for any reason which would not constitute justifiable cause (as hereinafter defined) or for other business reasons necessitating termination which do not constitute justifiable cause, in either case upon thirty (30) days' prior written notice to Executive; or

(ii) upon the determination of the Company that there is justifiable cause (as hereinafter defined) for such termination.

(b) The Term of Employment shall terminate upon:

(i) the death of Executive;

(ii) the date on which the Company elects to terminate the Term of Employment by reason of the "disability" of Executive (as hereinafter defined in subsection (c) herein) pursuant to subsection (g) hereof; or

(iii) Executive's resignation of employment.

(c) For the purposes of this Agreement, the term "disability" shall mean Executive is physically or mentally incapacitated so as to render Executive incapable of performing the essentials of Executive's job, even with reasonable accommodation, as reasonably determined by the Company, which determination shall be final and binding.

(d) For the purposes hereof, the term "justifiable cause" shall mean: any failure or refusal to perform any of the duties pursuant to this Agreement or any breach of this Agreement by the Executive; Executive's breach of any material written policies, rules or regulations which have been adopted by the Company; Executive's repeated failure to perform his duties in a satisfactory manner; Executive's performance of any act or his failure to act, as to which if Executive were prosecuted and convicted, a crime or offense involving money or property of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, or a crime or offense constituting a felony in the jurisdiction involved, would have occurred; any unauthorized disclosure by Executive to any person, firm or corporation of any confidential information or trade secret of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates; any attempt by Executive to secure any personal profit in connection with the business of the Company or any of its subsidiaries and affiliates; or the engaging by Executive in any business other than the business of the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates which interferes with the performance of his duties hereunder. Upon termination of Executive's employment for justifiable cause, Executive shall not be entitled to any amounts or benefits hereunder other than such portion of Executive's Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 5 hereof as have been accrued through the date of his termination of employment.

(e) If the Company terminates this Agreement without "justifiable cause" as provided in subsection 7(a)(i), the Company shall pay Executive his then current base salary for five months after the effectiveness of such termination, payable in equal payments in accordance with the Company's customary payroll practices commencing with the first payroll period that begins at least 30 days after the termination of the Executive's Term of Employment conditioned upon the Executive having provided the Company with an executed general release in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the "General Release") and the time for Executive's revocation of the General Release having expired. Such payments shall be made in accordance with the Company's customary payroll practices until paid in full. Any payment pursuant to this paragraph 7(e) is contingent upon Executive's execution of the General Release within 21 days after termination of the Term of Employment (and the Executive's not revoking that General Release) and will be in lieu of payments to which Executive might have been entitled under any other severance plan of the Company.

(f) If Executive shall die during the term of his employment hereunder, this Agreement shall terminate immediately. In such event, the estate of Executive shall thereupon be entitled to receive such portion of Executive's base annual salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 as have been accrued through the date of his death.

(g) Upon Executive's "disability", the Company shall have the right to terminate Executive's employment. Any termination pursuant to this subsection (g) shall be effective on the earlier of (i) the date 30 days after which Executive shall have received written notice of the Company's election to terminate or (ii) the date he begins to receive long-term disability insurance benefits under the policy provided by the Company pursuant to paragraph 5 hereof.

(h) Upon the resignation of Executive in any capacity, that resignation will be deemed to be a resignation from all offices and positions that Executive holds with respect to the Company and any of its subsidiaries and affiliates. In the event of Executive's resignation, he shall be entitled only to receive such portion of his annual Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 as have been accrued through the date of his resignation.

(i) Change of Control. In the event the Term of Employment is terminated by the Company without justifiable cause (as defined herein) or Executive resigns with Good Reason (as defined herein) within one (1) year following a Change of Control of the Company has occurred, then, in such event, the Company shall pay Executive an amount equal to twelve (12) months of Executive's highest Base Salary in effect at any time during the six (6) month period ending on the date of the Change of Control. For the purposes of the foregoing, Change of Control shall have the meaning set forth in the Company's 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan (without regard to any subsequent amendments thereto). For purposes of the foregoing, "Good Reason" means the occurrence of any of the following: (i) a material diminution in the Executive's base compensation; (ii) a material diminution in the Executive's authority, duties, or responsibilities; (iii) a material change in the geographic location at which the Employee must perform the services under this Agreement; or (iv) any other action or inaction that constitutes a material breach by the Company of this Agreement. For purposes of this provision, Good Reason shall not be deemed to exist unless the Employee's termination of employment for Good Reason occurs within 2 years following the initial existence of one of the conditions specified in clauses (i) through (iv) above, the Employee provides the Company with written notice of the existence of such condition within 90 days after the initial existence of the condition, and the Company fails to remedy the condition within 30 days after its receipt of such notice. The Company shall pay the amount required under this paragraph 7(i) in a single payment thirty (30) days after termination of the Term of Employment, subject to and conditioned upon the Executive's execution of the General Release required pursuant to paragraph 7(k) hereof and such release becoming irrevocable. Any payments made pursuant to this paragraph 7(j) will be in lieu of payments to which Executive might have been entitled under paragraph 7(e) of this Agreement or under any other severance plan of the Company. The payments under this Agreement shall be reduced if and to the extent necessary to avoid any payments or benefits to Executive being treated as "excess parachute payments" within the meaning of Internal Revenue Code Section 280G(b) (i).

(j) Clawback of Certain Compensation and Benefits. If, after the termination of the Term of Employment for any reason other than by the Company for "justifiable cause":

(i) it is determined in good faith by the Company within twelve (12) months after the termination of the Term of Employment (the "Termination Date") that the Executive's employment could have been terminated by the Company for justifiable cause under paragraph

7(d) hereof (unless the Company knew or should have known that as of the Termination Date, the Executive's employment could have been terminated for justifiable cause in accordance with paragraph 7(d) hereof); or

(ii) the Executive breaches any of the provisions of paragraph 10, then, in addition to any other remedy that may be available to the Company in law or equity and/or pursuant to any other provisions of this Agreement, the Executive's employment shall be deemed to have been terminated for justifiable cause retroactively to the Termination Date and the Executive also shall be subject to the following provisions:

(A) the Executive shall be required to pay to the Company, immediately upon written demand by the Company, all amounts paid to Executive by the Company, whether or not pursuant to this Agreement (other than such portion of Executive's Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 hereof as have been accrued through the date of the termination of the Term of Employment), on or after the Termination Date (including the pre-tax cost to the Company of any benefits that are in excess of the total amount that the Company would have been required to pay to the Executive if the Executive's employment with the Company had been terminated by the Company for justifiable cause in accordance with paragraph 7(d) above);

(B) all vested and unvested Awards (as that term is defined in the 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan) then held by the Executive shall immediately expire; and

(C) the Executive shall be required to pay to the Company, immediately upon written demand by the Company, an amount equal to any Gains resulting from the exercise or payment of any Awards (as that term is defined in the 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan) at any time on or after, or during the one year period prior to, the Termination Date. For these purposes, the term "Gain" shall mean (i) in the case of each stock option or stock appreciation right ("SAR"), the difference between the fair market value per share of the Company's common stock underlying such option or SAR as of the date on which the Executive exercised the option or SAR, less the exercise price or grant price of the option or SAR; and (ii) in the case of any Award other than a stock option or SAR that is satisfied by the issuance of Common Stock of the Company, the value of such stock on the Termination Date, and (iii) in the case of any Award other than a stock option or SAR, that is satisfied in cash or any property other than Common Stock of the Company, the amount of cash and the value of the property on the payment date paid to satisfy the Award.

(k) Any payment pursuant to paragraph 7(e) or 7(j) shall be contingent upon Executive's execution of the General Release within 21 days after termination of the Term of Employment, and the Executive's not revoking that release.

8. COMPLIANCE WITH SECTION 409A

(a) General. It is the intention of both the Company and the Executive that the benefits and rights to which the Executive could be entitled pursuant to this Agreement comply with Section 409A of the Code and the Treasury Regulations and other guidance promulgated or issued thereunder (“Section 409A”), to the extent that the requirements of Section 409A are applicable thereto, and the provisions of this Agreement shall be construed in a manner consistent with that intention. If the Executive or the Company believes, at any time, that any such benefit or right that is subject to Section 409A does not so comply, it shall promptly advise the other and shall negotiate reasonably and in good faith to amend the timing of such benefits and rights such that they comply with Section 409A (with the most limited possible economic effect on the Executive).

(b) Distributions on Account of Separation from Service. If and to the extent required to comply with Section 409A, no payment or benefit required to be paid under this Agreement on account of termination of the Executive’s employment shall be made unless and until the Executive incurs a “separation from service” within the meaning of Section 409A.

(c) 6 Month Delay for “Specified Employees”.

(i) If the Executive is a “specified employee”, then no payment or benefit that is payable on account of the Executive’s “separation from service”, as that term is defined for purposes of Section 409A, shall be made before the date that is six months after the Executive’s “separation from service” (or, if earlier, the date of the Executive’s death) if and to the extent that such payment or benefit constitutes deferred compensation (or may be nonqualified deferred compensation) under Section 409A and such deferral is required to comply with the requirements of Section 409A. Any payment or benefit delayed by reason of the prior sentence shall be paid out or provided in a single lump sum at the end of such required delay period in order to catch up to the original payment schedule. There shall be added to any payments that are delayed pursuant to this provision interest at the prime rate as reported in the Wall Street Journal for the date of the Executive’s separation from service. Such interest shall be calculated from the date on which the payment otherwise would have been made until the date on which the payment is made.

(ii) For purposes of this provision, the Executive shall be considered to be a “specified employee” if, at the time of his or her separation from service, the Executive is a “key employee”, within the meaning of Section 416(i) of the Code, of the Company (or any person or entity with whom the Company would be considered a single employer under Section 414(b) or Section 414(c) of the Code) any stock in which is publicly traded on an established securities market or otherwise.

(d) No Acceleration of Payments. Neither the Company nor the Executive, individually or in combination, may accelerate any payment or benefit that is subject to Section 409A, except in compliance with Section 409A and the provisions of this Agreement, and no amount that is subject to Section 409A shall be paid prior to the earliest date on which it may be paid without violating Section 409A.

(e) Treatment of Each Installment as a Separate Payment. For purposes of applying the provisions of Section 409A to this Agreement, each separately identified amount to which the Executive is entitled under this Agreement shall be treated as a separate payment. In addition, to the extent permissible under Section 409A, any series of installment payments under this Agreement shall be treated as a right to a series of separate payments.

(f) Taxable Reimbursements.

(i) Any reimbursements by the Company to the Executive of any eligible expenses under this Agreement that are not excludable from the Executive's income for Federal income tax purposes (the "Taxable Reimbursements") shall be made by no later than the earlier of the date on which they would be paid under the Company's normal policies and the last day of the taxable year of the Executive following the year in which the expense was incurred.

(ii) The amount of any Taxable Reimbursements to be provided to the Executive during any taxable year of the Executive shall not affect the expenses eligible for reimbursement to be provided in any other taxable year of the Executive.

(iii) The right to Taxable Reimbursements shall not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit.

## 9. REPRESENTATION AND AGREEMENTS OF EXECUTIVE

(a) Executive represents and warrants that he is free to enter into this Agreement and to perform the duties required hereunder, and that there are no employment contracts or understandings, restrictive covenants or other restrictions, whether written or oral, preventing the performance of his duties hereunder.

(b) Executive agrees to submit to a medical examination and to cooperate and supply such other information and documents as may be required by any insurance company in connection with the Company's obtaining life insurance on the life of Executive, and any other type of insurance or fringe benefit as the Company shall determine from time to time to obtain.

(c) Executive represents and warrants that he has never been convicted of a felony and he has not been convicted or incarcerated for a misdemeanor within the past five years, other than a first conviction for drunkenness, simple assault, speeding, minor traffic violations, affray, or disturbance of the peace.

(d) Executive represents and warrants that he has never been a party to any judicial or administrative proceeding that resulted in a judgement, decree, or final order (i) enjoining him from future violations of, or prohibiting any violations of any federal or state securities law, or (ii) finding any violations of any federal or state securities law.

(e) Executive represents and warrants that he has never been accused of any impropriety in connection with any employment;

Any breach of any of the above representations and warranties is "justifiable cause" for termination under paragraph 7(d) of this Agreement.

#### 10. NON-COMPETITION

(a) Executive agrees that during the Term of Employment and during the one (1) year period immediately following the Termination Date (the "Non-Competitive Period"), Executive shall not, directly or indirectly, as owner, partner, joint venturer, stockholder, employee, broker, agent, principal, trustee, corporate officer, director, licensor, or in any capacity whatsoever, engage in, become financially interested in, be employed by, render any consultation or business advice with respect to, accept any competitive business on behalf of, or have any connection with any business which is competitive with products or services of the Company or any subsidiaries and affiliates, in any geographic area in which the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates are then conducting or proposing to conduct business, including, without limitation, the United States of America and its possessions, Canada and Europe; provided, however, that Executive may own any securities of any corporation which is engaged in such business and is publicly owned and traded but in an amount not to exceed at any one time one percent (1%) of any class of stock or securities of such corporation. In addition, Executive shall not, during the Non-Competitive Period, directly or indirectly, request or cause any suppliers or customers with whom the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates has a business relationship to cancel or terminate any such business relationship with the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates or otherwise compromise the Company's good will or solicit, hire, interfere with or entice from the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates any employee (or former employee who has been separated from service for less than 12 months) of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates.

(b) If any portion of the restrictions set forth in this paragraph 10 should, for any reason whatsoever, be declared invalid by a court of competent jurisdiction, the validity or enforceability of the remainder of such restrictions shall not thereby be adversely affected. For the purposes of this paragraph 10, a business competitive with the products and services of the Company (or such subsidiaries and affiliates) is limited to a specialty retailer which primarily distributes, sells or markets so-called "big and tall" apparel of any kind for men or which utilizes the "big and tall" retail or wholesale marketing concept as part of its business.

(c) Executive acknowledges that the Company conducts business throughout the world, that Executive's duties and responsibilities on behalf of the Company are of a worldwide nature, that its sales and marketing prospects are for continued expansion throughout the world and therefore, the territorial and time limitations set forth in this paragraph 10 are reasonable and

properly required for the adequate protection of the business of the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates. In the event any such territorial or time limitation is deemed to be unreasonable by a court of competent jurisdiction, Executive agrees to the reduction of the territorial or time limitation to the area or period which such court shall deem reasonable.

(d) The existence of any claim or cause of action (a claim or cause of action is defined as a claim or cause of action which results from a breach of the terms and provisions of this Agreement by the Company, regardless of whether the breach is material) by Executive against the Company or any subsidiary or affiliate shall not constitute a defense to the enforcement by the Company or any subsidiary or affiliate of the foregoing restrictive covenants, but such claim or cause of action shall be litigated separately.

#### 11. INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

(a) Upon execution of this Agreement and thereafter, Executive shall promptly and fully disclose to the Company, and with all necessary detail for a complete understanding of the same, all existing and future developments, know-how, discoveries, inventions, improvements, concepts, ideas, writings, formulae, processes and methods (whether copyrightable, patentable or otherwise) made, received, conceived, acquired or written during working hours, or otherwise, by Executive (whether or not at the request or upon the suggestion of the Company) during the period of his employment with, or rendering of advisory or consulting services to, the Company or any of its subsidiaries and affiliates, solely or jointly with others, in or relating to any activities of the Company or its subsidiaries and affiliates known to him as a consequence of his employment or the rendering of advisory and consulting services hereunder (collectively the "Subject Matter").

(b) Executive hereby assigns and transfers, and agrees to assign and transfer, to the Company, all his rights, title and interest in and to the Subject Matter, and Executive further agrees to deliver to the Company any and all drawings, notes, specifications and data relating to the Subject Matter, and to execute, acknowledge and deliver all such further papers, including applications for copyrights or patents, as may be necessary to obtain copyrights and patents for any thereof in any and all countries and to vest title thereto to the Company. Executive shall assist the Company in obtaining such copyrights or patents during the term of this Agreement, and at any time thereafter on reasonable notice and at mutually convenient times, and Executive agrees to testify in any prosecution or litigation involving any of the Subject Matter; provided, however, after the Term of Employment that Executive shall be compensated in a timely manner at the rate of \$250 per day (or portion thereof), plus out-of-pocket expenses incurred in rendering such assistance or giving or preparing to give such testimony if it is required after the termination of this Agreement.

#### 12. NON-DISCLOSURE OF CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

(a) Executive acknowledges that the Company possesses certain confidential and propriety information that has been or may be revealed to him or learned by Executive during the course of Executive's employment with the Company and that it would be unfair to use that information or knowledge to compete with or to otherwise disadvantage the Company. Executive

shall not, during the Term of Employment or at any time following the Term of Employment, directly or indirectly, disclose or permit to be known (other than as is required in the regular course of his duties (including without limitation disclosures to the Company's advisors and consultants), as required by law (in which case Executive shall give the Company prior written notice of such required disclosure) or with the prior written consent of the Board of Directors, to any person, firm, corporation, or other entity, any confidential information acquired by him during the course of, or as an incident to, his employment or the rendering of his advisory or consulting services hereunder, relating to the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates, the directors of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, any supplier or customer of the Company or any of their subsidiaries or affiliates, or any corporation, partnership or other entity owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by any of the foregoing, or in which any of the foregoing has a beneficial interest, including, but not limited to, the business affairs of each of the foregoing. Such confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to, proprietary technology, trade secrets, patented processes, research and development data, know-how, market studies and forecasts, financial data, competitive analyses, pricing policies, employee lists, personnel policies, the substance of agreements with customers, suppliers and others, marketing or dealership arrangements, servicing and training programs and arrangements, supplier lists, customer lists and any other documents embodying such confidential information. This confidentiality obligation shall not apply to any confidential information, which is or becomes publicly available other than pursuant to a breach of this paragraph 12(a) by Executive.

(b) All information and documents relating to the Company and its subsidiaries or affiliates as herein above described (or other business affairs) shall be the exclusive property of the Company, and Executive shall use commercially reasonable best efforts to prevent any publication or disclosure thereof. Upon termination of Executive's employment with the Company, all documents, records, reports, writings and other similar documents containing confidential information, including copies thereof then in Executive's possession or control shall be returned and left with the Company.

### 13. SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE

Executive agrees that if he breaches, or threatens to commit a breach of, any enforceable provision of paragraphs 10, 11 or 12 (the "Restrictive Covenants"), the Company shall have, in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other rights and remedies available to the Company under law and in equity, the right to have the Restrictive Covenants specifically enforced by a court of competent jurisdiction, it being agreed that any such breach or threatened breach of the Restrictive Covenants would cause irreparable injury to the Company and that money damages would not provide an adequate remedy to the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall constitute a waiver by Executive of his right to contest whether such a breach or threatened breach of any Restrictive Covenant has occurred. In the event of litigation between the parties to this Agreement regarding their respective rights and obligations under paragraphs 10, 11, or 12 hereof, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover from the other all attorneys' fees and expenses reasonably incurred in obtaining a ruling in the prevailing party's favor. Any such damages, attorneys' fees and costs shall be in addition to and not in lieu of any injunctive relief that may be available to the Company.

14. AMENDMENT OR ALTERATION

No amendment or alteration of the terms of this Agreement shall be valid unless made in writing and signed by both of the parties hereto.

15. GOVERNING LAW

This Agreement shall be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with the substantive laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, without regard to its principles of conflicts of laws.

16. SEVERABILITY

The holding of any provision of this Agreement to be invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction shall not affect any other provision of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect.

17. NOTICES

Any notices required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be sufficient if in writing, and if delivered by hand or courier, or sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, to the addresses set forth above or such other address as either party may from time to time designate in writing to the other, and shall be deemed given as of the date of the delivery or of the placement of the notice in the mail.

18. WAIVER OR BREACH

It is agreed that a waiver by either party of a breach of any provision of this Agreement shall not operate, or be construed as a waiver of any subsequent breach by that same party.

19. ENTIRE AGREEMENT AND BINDING EFFECT

This Agreement contains the entire agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective legal representatives, heirs, distributors, successors and assigns and supersedes any and all prior agreements between the parties whether oral or written. This Agreement may not be modified except upon further written agreement executed by both parties. Executive agrees that the Company may in its sole discretion, during the term of Executive's employment with the Company and thereafter, provide copies of this Agreement (or excerpts of the Agreement) to others, including businesses or entities that may employ, do business with, or consider employing Executive in the future. Executive further agrees that any subsequent change or changes in his duties, compensation or areas of responsibility shall in no way affect the validity of this Agreement or otherwise render inapplicable any of the provisions of paragraphs 10 through 13 of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect except as may be modified by a subsequent written agreement.

20. SURVIVAL

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the termination of Executive's employment hereunder or the expiration of this Agreement shall not affect the enforceability of paragraphs 7 through 26 hereof, which shall survive the termination or expiration.

21. RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES

Any and all disputes arising under or in connection with this Agreement shall be resolved in accordance with this paragraph 21 and paragraph 15.

The parties shall attempt to resolve any dispute, controversy or difference that may arise between them through good faith negotiations. In the event the parties fail to reach resolution of any such dispute within thirty (30) days after entering into negotiations, either party may proceed to institute action in any state or federal court located within the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, which courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction, and each party consents to the personal jurisdiction of any such state or federal court. Both parties waive their right to a trial by jury.

22. NON-DISPARAGEMENT

Executive agrees not to make disparaging, critical or otherwise detrimental comments to any person or entity concerning the Company, its officers, directors, trustees, and employees or the services or programs provided or to be provided by the Company and the Company agrees not to make any disparaging, critical or otherwise detrimental comments to any person or entity concerning Executive.

23. FURTHER ASSURANCES

The parties agree to execute and deliver all such further documents, agreements and instruments and take such other and further action as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and intent of this Agreement.

24. SUBSIDIARIES AND AFFILIATES

For purposes of this Agreement:

(a) "affiliate" means any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, the Company, and "control" means the power to exercise a controlling influence over the management or policies of an entity, unless such power is solely the result of an official position with such entity; and

(b) “subsidiary” means any corporation or other entity in which the Company has a direct or indirect ownership interest of 50% or more of the total combined voting power of the then outstanding securities or interests of such corporation or other entity entitled to vote generally in the election of directors (or similar governing body of a non-corporate entity) or in which the Company has the right to receive 50% or more of the distribution of profits or 50% or more of the assets on liquidation or dissolution.

25. HEADINGS

The paragraph headings appearing in this Agreement are for the purposes of easy reference and shall not be considered a part of this Agreement or in any way modify, amend or affect its provisions.

26. COUNTERPARTS

This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one and the same agreement.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement, under seal, as of the date and year first above written.

DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.

By: /s/ David A. Levin  
Name: David A. Levin  
Its: President, Chief Executive Officer

Date: December 22, 2017

By: /s/ Peter H. Stratton, Jr.  
Name: Peter H. Stratton, Jr.

Date: December 22, 2017

**EXHIBIT A**  
**FORM OF RELEASE**

**GENERAL RELEASE OF CLAIMS**

1. Peter H. Stratton, Jr. ("Executive"), for himself and his family, heirs, executors, administrators, legal representatives and their respective successors and assigns, in exchange for good and valuable consideration to be paid after the date of his termination as set forth in the Employment Agreement to which this release is attached as Exhibit A (the "Employment Agreement"), does hereby release and forever discharge Destination XL Group, Inc. (the "Company"), its subsidiaries, affiliated companies, successors and assigns, and their respective current or former directors, officers, employees, shareholders or agents in such capacities (collectively with the Company, the "Released Parties") from any and all actions, causes of action, suits, controversies, claims and demands whatsoever, for or by reason of any matter, cause or thing whatsoever, whether known or unknown including, but not limited to, all claims under any applicable laws arising under or in connection with Executive's employment or termination thereof, whether for tort, breach of express or implied employment contract, wrongful discharge, intentional infliction of emotional distress, or defamation or injuries incurred on the job or incurred as a result of loss of employment. Executive acknowledges that the Company encouraged him to consult with an attorney of his choosing, and through this General Release of Claims encourages him to consult with his attorney with respect to possible claims under the Age Discrimination in Employment Act ("ADEA") and that he understands that the ADEA is a Federal statute that, among other things, prohibits discrimination on the basis of age in employment and employee benefits and benefit plans. Without limiting the generality of the release provided above, Executive expressly waives any and all claims under ADEA that he may have as of the date hereof. Executive further understands that by signing this General Release of Claims he is in fact waiving, releasing and forever giving up any claim under the ADEA as well as all other laws within the scope of this paragraph 1 that may have existed on or prior to the date hereof. Notwithstanding anything in this paragraph 1 to the contrary, this General Release of Claims shall not apply to (i) any rights to receive any payments pursuant to paragraph 7 of the Employment Agreement, or any accrued but unpaid benefits under any employee benefit plan maintained by the Company (ii) any rights or claims that may arise as a result of events occurring after the date this General Release of Claims is executed, (iii) any indemnification rights Executive may have as a former officer or director of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliated companies, (iv) any claims for benefits under any directors' and officers' liability policy maintained by the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliated companies in accordance with the terms of such policy, (v) any rights as a holder of equity securities of the Company, and (vi) any rights or claims that, by law, may not be waived, including claims for unemployment compensation and workers' compensation. Nothing contained in this Agreement prevents you from filing a charge, cooperating with or participating in any investigation or proceeding before any federal or state Fair Employment Practices Agency, including, without limitation, the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, except that you acknowledge that you will not be able to recover any monetary benefits in connection with any such claim, charge or proceeding.

2. Executive represents that he has not filed against the Released Parties any complaints, charges, or lawsuits arising out of his employment, or any other matter arising on or prior to the date of this General Release of Claims, and covenants and agrees that he will never individually or with any person file, or commence the filing of, any charges, lawsuits, complaints or proceedings with any governmental agency, or against the Released Parties with respect to any of the matters released by Executive pursuant to paragraph 1 hereof (a "Proceeding"); provided, however, Executive shall not have relinquished his right to commence a Proceeding to challenge whether Executive knowingly and voluntarily waived his rights under ADEA.

3. Executive hereby acknowledges that the Company has informed him that he has up to twenty-one (21) days to sign this General Release of Claims and he may knowingly and voluntarily waive that twenty-one (21) day period by signing this General Release of Claims earlier. Executive also understands that he shall have seven (7) days following the date on which he signs this General Release of Claims within which to revoke it by providing a written notice of his revocation to the Company.

4. Executive acknowledges that this General Release of Claims will be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the internal laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts applicable to contracts made and to be performed entirely within such State.

5. Executive acknowledges that he has read this General Release of Claims, that he has been advised that he should consult with an attorney before he executes this general release of claims, and that he understands all of its terms and executes it voluntarily and with full knowledge of its significance and the consequences thereof.

6. This General Release of Claims shall take effect on the eighth day following Executive's execution of this General Release of Claims unless Executive's written revocation is delivered to the Company within seven (7) days after such execution.

---

Peter H. Stratton, Jr.

**AMENDED AND RESTATED EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT**

This Amended and Restated Employment Agreement ("Agreement") is made effective as of November 27, 2017 (the "Effective Date") between DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC., a Delaware corporation with an office at 555 Turnpike Street, Canton, Massachusetts, 02021 (the "Company" which term includes any affiliates and subsidiaries), and Brian S. Reaves (the "Executive") having an address at 875 Saints Drive, Marietta, Georgia 3000.

**WITNESSETH:**

WHEREAS, the Company desires that Executive work for the Company and Executive desires to be so employed by the Company as its Executive Vice President, Chief Customer Officer.

WHEREAS, Executive and the Company desire to set forth in writing the terms and conditions of the Executive's employment with the Company from the date hereof.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the promises and the mutual promises, representations and covenants herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

1. **EMPLOYMENT**

The Company hereby employs Executive and Executive hereby accepts such employment, subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth.

2. **TERM**

The term of employment under this Agreement (the "Term of Employment") shall begin on the Effective Date and shall continue until terminated by either party as hereinafter set forth.

3. **COMPENSATION**

(a) During the Term of Employment, as compensation for the employment services to be rendered by Executive hereunder, the Company agrees to pay to Executive, and Executive agrees to accept, payable in equal bi-weekly installments in accordance with Company practice, an annual base salary of Four Hundred Thousand Dollars and 00/100 Cents (\$400,000.00) (the "Base Salary") as of the Effective Date. The Base Salary shall be reviewed at least annually to ascertain whether, in the judgment of the Company, such Base Salary should be adjusted. If so, the adjusted Base Salary shall be adjusted for all purposes of this Agreement.

(b) In addition to the Base Salary, during the Term of Employment, Executive is eligible to participate in the Company's Annual Incentive Plan. Such incentive shall be determined and payable in accordance with the Company's incentive program in effect at the time, subject to change from year to year in the Company's sole discretion. Executive will participate in the Company's incentive program and, commencing with Fiscal 2018, Executive's

---

target bonus under such plan (if all individual and Company performance conditions are met) shall be 55% of Executive's actual annual base earnings (which shall be the total Base Salary as may be paid during the fiscal year ("Base Earnings")). The actual award under the incentive program, if any, may be more or less than the target and will be based on Executive's performance and the performance of the Company and payment will be made in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of the incentive program then in effect.

(c) In addition, during the Term of Employment, Executive is eligible to participate in the Company's Long Term Incentive Plan ("LTIP"). Such incentive shall be determined and distributable in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions as described in the LTIP documents in effect at the time of the award, subject to change from year to year in the Compensation Committee's sole discretion. Executive will participate in the Company's LTIP at a target incentive rate of 70% of Executive's Base Salary in effect on the Executive's Effective Date of Participation, for the incentive period, based upon the Company's targeted performance as defined in the LTIP documents in effect at the time of the award.

#### 4. EXPENSES

The Company shall pay or reimburse Executive, in accordance with the Company's policies and procedures and upon presentment of suitable vouchers, for all reasonable business and travel expenses, which may be incurred or paid by Executive during the Term of Employment in connection with his employment hereunder. Executive shall comply with such restrictions and shall keep such records as the Company may reasonably deem necessary to meet the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended from time to time, and regulations promulgated thereunder.

#### 5. OTHER BENEFITS

(a) During the Term of Employment, Executive shall be entitled to such vacations and to participate in and receive any other benefits customarily provided by the Company to its management (including any profit sharing, pension, 401(k), short and long-term disability insurance, medical and dental insurance and group life insurance plans in accordance with and subject to the terms of such plans, including, without limitation, any eligibility requirements contained therein), all as determined from time to time by the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors in its discretion.

(b) The Company will, during the Term of Employment, provide Executive with an automobile allowance in the total amount of Eight Thousand Four Hundred Dollars and 00/100 (\$8,400.00) annually, in equal bi-weekly payments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll practices. Executive shall pay and be responsible for all insurance, repairs and maintenance costs associated with operating the automobile. Executive is responsible for his gasoline, unless the gasoline expense is reimbursable under the Company's policies and procedures.

(c) Executive will be eligible to participate in the Company's annual performance appraisal process.

6. DUTIES

(a) Executive shall perform such duties and functions consistent with the position of Executive Vice President and Chief Customer Officer and/or as the Company shall from time to time determine and Executive shall comply in the performance of his duties with the policies of, and be subject to the direction of the Company.

(b) During the Term of Employment, Executive shall devote substantially all of his time and attention, vacation time and absences for sickness excepted, to the business of the Company, as necessary to fulfill his duties. Executive shall perform the duties assigned to him with fidelity and to the best of his ability. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, and subject to the foregoing, Executive shall not be prevented from accepting positions in outside organizations so long as such activities do not interfere with Executive's performance of his duties hereunder and do not violate paragraph 10 hereof.

(c) The principal location at which the Executive shall perform his duties hereunder shall be at the Company's offices in Canton, Massachusetts or at such other location as may be temporarily designated from time to time by the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive shall perform such services at such other locations as may be required for the proper performance of his duties hereunder, and Executive recognizes that such duties may involve travel.

7. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT; EFFECT OF TERMINATION

(a) The Term of Employment may be terminated by the Company at any time:

(i) upon the determination by the Company that Executive's performance of his duties has not been fully satisfactory for any reason which would not constitute justifiable cause (as hereinafter defined) or for other business reasons necessitating termination which do not constitute justifiable cause, in either case upon thirty (30) days' prior written notice to Executive; or

(ii) upon the determination of the Company that there is justifiable cause (as hereinafter defined) for such termination.

(b) The Term of Employment shall terminate upon:

(i) the death of Executive;

(ii) the date on which the Company elects to terminate the Term of Employment by reason of the "disability" of Executive (as hereinafter defined in subsection (c) herein) pursuant to subsection (g) hereof; or

(iii) Executive's resignation of employment.

(c) For the purposes of this Agreement, the term "disability" shall mean Executive is physically or mentally incapacitated so as to render Executive incapable of performing the essentials of Executive's job, even with reasonable accommodation, as reasonably determined by the Company, which determination shall be final and binding.

(d) For the purposes hereof, the term "justifiable cause" shall mean: any failure or refusal to perform any of the duties pursuant to this Agreement or any breach of this Agreement by the Executive; Executive's breach of any material written policies, rules or regulations which have been adopted by the Company; Executive's repeated failure to perform his duties in a satisfactory manner; Executive's performance of any act or his failure to act, as to which if Executive were prosecuted and convicted, a crime or offense involving money or property of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, or a crime or offense constituting a felony in the jurisdiction involved, would have occurred; any unauthorized disclosure by Executive to any person, firm or corporation of any confidential information or trade secret of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates; any attempt by Executive to secure any personal profit in connection with the business of the Company or any of its subsidiaries and affiliates; or the engaging by Executive in any business other than the business of the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates which interferes with the performance of his duties hereunder. Upon termination of Executive's employment for justifiable cause, Executive shall not be entitled to any amounts or benefits hereunder other than such portion of Executive's Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 5 hereof as have been accrued through the date of his termination of employment.

(e) If the Company terminates this Agreement without "justifiable cause" as provided in subsection 7(a)(i), the Company shall pay Executive his then current base salary for five months after the effectiveness of such termination, payable in equal payments in accordance with the Company's customary payroll practices commencing with the first payroll period that begins at least 30 days after the termination of the Executive's Term of Employment conditioned upon the Executive having provided the Company with an executed general release in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the "General Release") and the time for Executive's revocation of the General Release having expired. Such payments shall be made in accordance with the Company's customary payroll practices until paid in full. Any payment pursuant to this paragraph 7(e) is contingent upon Executive's execution of the General Release within 21 days after termination of the Term of Employment (and the Executive's not revoking that General Release) and will be in lieu of payments to which Executive might have been entitled under any other severance plan of the Company.

(f) If Executive shall die during the term of his employment hereunder, this Agreement shall terminate immediately. In such event, the estate of Executive shall thereupon be entitled to receive such portion of Executive's base annual salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 as have been accrued through the date of his death.

(g) Upon Executive's "disability", the Company shall have the right to terminate Executive's employment. Any termination pursuant to this subsection (g) shall be effective on the earlier of (i) the date 30 days after which Executive shall have received written notice of the Company's election to terminate or (ii) the date he begins to receive long-term disability insurance benefits under the policy provided by the Company pursuant to paragraph 5 hereof.

(h) Upon the resignation of Executive in any capacity, that resignation will be deemed to be a resignation from all offices and positions that Executive holds with respect to the Company and any of its subsidiaries and affiliates. In the event of Executive's resignation, he shall be entitled only to receive such portion of his annual Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 as have been accrued through the date of his resignation.

(i) Change of Control. In the event the Term of Employment is terminated by the Company without justifiable cause (as defined herein) or Executive resigns with Good Reason (as defined herein) within one (1) year following a Change of Control of the Company has occurred, then, in such event, the Company shall pay Executive an amount equal to twelve (12) months of Base Salary in effect at the time of the termination. For the purposes of the foregoing, Change of Control shall have the meaning set forth in the Company's 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan (without regard to any subsequent amendments thereto). For purposes of the foregoing, "Good Reason" means the occurrence of any of the following: (i) a material diminution in the Executive's base compensation; (ii) a material diminution in the Executive's authority, duties, or responsibilities; (iii) a material change in the geographic location at which the Employee must perform the services under this Agreement; or (iv) any other action or inaction that constitutes a material breach by the Company of this Agreement. For purposes of this provision, Good Reason shall not be deemed to exist unless the Employee's termination of employment for Good Reason occurs within 2 years following the initial existence of one of the conditions specified in clauses (i) through (iv) above, the Employee provides the Company with written notice of the existence of such condition within 90 days after the initial existence of the condition, and the Company fails to remedy the condition within 30 days after its receipt of such notice. The Company shall pay the amount required under this paragraph 7(i) in a single payment thirty (30) days after termination of the Term of Employment, subject to and conditioned upon the Executive's execution of the General Release required pursuant to paragraph 7(k) hereof and such release becoming irrevocable. Any payments made pursuant to this paragraph 7(j) will be in lieu of payments to which Executive might have been entitled under paragraph 7(e) of this Agreement or under any other severance plan of the Company. The payments under this Agreement shall be reduced if and to the extent necessary to avoid any payments or benefits to Executive being treated as "excess parachute payments" within the meaning of Internal Revenue Code Section 280G(b)(i).

(j) Clawback of Certain Compensation and Benefits. If, after the termination of the Term of Employment for any reason other than by the Company for “justifiable cause”:

(i) it is determined in good faith by the Company within twelve (12) months after the termination of the Term of Employment (the “Termination Date”) that the Executive’s employment could have been terminated by the Company for justifiable cause under paragraph 7(d) hereof (unless the Company knew or should have known that as of the Termination Date, the Executive’s employment could have been terminated for justifiable cause in accordance with paragraph 7(d) hereof); or

(ii) the Executive breaches any of the provisions of paragraph 10, then, in addition to any other remedy that may be available to the Company in law or equity and/or pursuant to any other provisions of this Agreement, the Executive’s employment shall be deemed to have been terminated for justifiable cause retroactively to the Termination Date and the Executive also shall be subject to the following provisions:

(A) the Executive shall be required to pay to the Company, immediately upon written demand by the Company, all amounts paid to Executive by the Company, whether or not pursuant to this Agreement (other than such portion of Executive’s Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 hereof as have been accrued through the date of the termination of the Term of Employment), on or after the Termination Date (including the pre-tax cost to the Company of any benefits that are in excess of the total amount that the Company would have been required to pay to the Executive if the Executive’s employment with the Company had been terminated by the Company for justifiable cause in accordance with paragraph 7(d) above);

(B) all vested and unvested Awards (as that term is defined in the 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan) then held by the Executive shall immediately expire; and

(C) the Executive shall be required to pay to the Company, immediately upon written demand by the Company, an amount equal to any Gains resulting from the exercise or payment of any Awards (as that term is defined in the 2006 Incentive Compensation Plan) at any time on or after, or during the one year period prior to, the Termination Date. For these purposes, the term “Gain” shall mean (i) in the case of each stock option or stock appreciation right (“SAR”), the difference between the fair market value per share of the Company’s common stock underlying such option or SAR as of the date on which the Executive exercised the option or SAR, less the exercise price or grant price of the option or SAR; and (ii) in the case of any Award other than a stock option or SAR that is satisfied by the issuance of Common Stock of the Company, the value of such stock on the Termination Date, and (iii) in the case of any Award other than a stock option or SAR, that is satisfied in cash or any property other than Common Stock of the Company, the amount of cash and the value of the property on the payment date paid to satisfy the Award.

(k) Any payment pursuant to paragraph 7(e) or 7(j) shall be contingent upon Executive’s execution of the General Release within 21 days after termination of the Term of Employment, and the Executive’s not revoking that release.

## 8. COMPLIANCE WITH SECTION 409A

(a) General. It is the intention of both the Company and the Executive that the benefits and rights to which the Executive could be entitled pursuant to this Agreement comply with Section 409A of the Code and the Treasury Regulations and other guidance promulgated or issued thereunder (“Section 409A”), to the extent that the requirements of Section 409A are applicable thereto, and the provisions of this Agreement shall be construed in a manner consistent with that intention. If the Executive or the Company believes, at any time, that any such benefit or right that is subject to Section 409A does not so comply, it shall promptly advise the other and shall negotiate reasonably and in good faith to amend the timing of such benefits and rights such that they comply with Section 409A (with the most limited possible economic effect on the Executive).

(b) Distributions on Account of Separation from Service. If and to the extent required to comply with Section 409A, no payment or benefit required to be paid under this Agreement on account of termination of the Executive’s employment shall be made unless and until the Executive incurs a “separation from service” within the meaning of Section 409A.

(c) 6 Month Delay for “Specified Employees”.

(i) If the Executive is a “specified employee”, then no payment or benefit that is payable on account of the Executive’s “separation from service”, as that term is defined for purposes of Section 409A, shall be made before the date that is six months after the Executive’s “separation from service” (or, if earlier, the date of the Executive’s death) if and to the extent that such payment or benefit constitutes deferred compensation (or may be nonqualified deferred compensation) under Section 409A and such deferral is required to comply with the requirements of Section 409A. Any payment or benefit delayed by reason of the prior sentence shall be paid out or provided in a single lump sum at the end of such required delay period in order to catch up to the original payment schedule. There shall be added to any payments that are delayed pursuant to this provision interest at the prime rate as reported in the Wall Street Journal for the date of the Executive’s separation from service. Such interest shall be calculated from the date on which the payment otherwise would have been made until the date on which the payment is made.

(ii) For purposes of this provision, the Executive shall be considered to be a “specified employee” if, at the time of his or her separation from service, the Executive is a “key employee”, within the meaning of Section 416(i) of the Code, of the Company (or any person or entity with whom the Company would be considered a single employer under Section 414(b) or Section 414(c) of the Code) any stock in which is publicly traded on an established securities market or otherwise.

(d) No Acceleration of Payments. Neither the Company nor the Executive, individually or in combination, may accelerate any payment or benefit that is subject to Section 409A, except in compliance with Section 409A and the provisions of this Agreement, and no amount that is subject to Section 409A shall be paid prior to the earliest date on which it may be paid without violating Section 409A.

(e) Treatment of Each Installment as a Separate Payment. For purposes of applying the provisions of Section 409A to this Agreement, each separately identified amount to which the Executive is entitled under this Agreement shall be treated as a separate payment. In addition, to the extent permissible under Section 409A, any series of installment payments under this Agreement shall be treated as a right to a series of separate payments.

(f) Taxable Reimbursements.

(i) Any reimbursements by the Company to the Executive of any eligible expenses under this Agreement that are not excludable from the Executive's income for Federal income tax purposes (the "Taxable Reimbursements") shall be made by no later than the earlier of the date on which they would be paid under the Company's normal policies and the last day of the taxable year of the Executive following the year in which the expense was incurred.

(ii) The amount of any Taxable Reimbursements to be provided to the Executive during any taxable year of the Executive shall not affect the expenses eligible for reimbursement to be provided in any other taxable year of the Executive.

(iii) The right to Taxable Reimbursements shall not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit.

## 9. REPRESENTATION AND AGREEMENTS OF EXECUTIVE

(a) Executive represents and warrants that he is free to enter into this Agreement and to perform the duties required hereunder, and that there are no employment contracts or understandings, restrictive covenants or other restrictions, whether written or oral, preventing the performance of his duties hereunder.

(b) Executive agrees to submit to a medical examination and to cooperate and supply such other information and documents as may be required by any insurance company in connection with the Company's obtaining life insurance on the life of Executive, and any other type of insurance or fringe benefit as the Company shall determine from time to time to obtain.

(c) Executive represents and warrants that he has never been convicted of a felony and he has not been convicted or incarcerated for a misdemeanor within the past five years, other than a first conviction for drunkenness, simple assault, speeding, minor traffic violations, affray, or disturbance of the peace.

(d) Executive represents and warrants that he has never been a party to any judicial or administrative proceeding that resulted in a judgement, decree, or final order (i) enjoining him from future violations of, or prohibiting any violations of any federal or state securities law, or (ii) finding any violations of any federal or state securities law.

(e) Executive represents and warrants that he has never been accused of any impropriety in connection with any employment;

Any breach of any of the above representations and warranties is "justifiable cause" for termination under paragraph 7(d) of this Agreement.

## 10. NON-COMPETITION

(a) Executive agrees that during the Term of Employment and during the one (1) year period immediately following the Termination Date (the "Non-Competitive Period"), Executive shall not, directly or indirectly, as owner, partner, joint venturer, stockholder, employee, broker, agent, principal, trustee, corporate officer, director, licensor, or in any capacity whatsoever, engage in, become financially interested in, be employed by, render any consultation or business advice with respect to, accept any competitive business on behalf of, or have any connection with any business which is competitive with products or services of the Company or any subsidiaries and affiliates, in any geographic area in which the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates are then conducting or proposing to conduct business, including, without limitation, the United States of America and its possessions, Canada and Europe; provided, however, that Executive may own any securities of any corporation which is engaged in such business and is publicly owned and traded but in an amount not to exceed at any one time one percent (1%) of any class of stock or securities of such corporation. In addition, Executive shall not, during the Non-Competitive Period, directly or indirectly, request or cause any suppliers or customers with whom the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates has a business relationship to cancel or terminate any such business relationship with the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates or otherwise compromise the Company's good will or solicit, hire, interfere with or entice from the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates any employee (or former employee who has been separated from service for less than 12 months) of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates.

(b) If any portion of the restrictions set forth in this paragraph 10 should, for any reason whatsoever, be declared invalid by a court of competent jurisdiction, the validity or enforceability of the remainder of such restrictions shall not thereby be adversely affected. For the purposes of this paragraph 10, a business competitive with the products and services of the Company (or such subsidiaries and affiliates) is limited to a specialty retailer which primarily distributes, sells or markets so-called "big and tall" apparel of any kind for men or which utilizes the "big and tall" retail or wholesale marketing concept as part of its business.

(c) Executive acknowledges that the Company conducts business throughout the world, that Executive's duties and responsibilities on behalf of the Company are of a worldwide nature, that its sales and marketing prospects are for continued expansion throughout the world and therefore, the territorial and time limitations set forth in this paragraph 10 are reasonable and properly required for the adequate protection of the business of the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates. In the event any such territorial or time limitation is deemed to be unreasonable by a court of competent jurisdiction, Executive agrees to the reduction of the territorial or time limitation to the area or period which such court shall deem reasonable.

(d) The existence of any claim or cause of action (a claim or cause of action is defined as a claim or cause of action which results from a breach of the terms and provisions of this Agreement by the Company, regardless of whether the breach is material) by Executive

against the Company or any subsidiary or affiliate shall not constitute a defense to the enforcement by the Company or any subsidiary or affiliate of the foregoing restrictive covenants, but such claim or cause of action shall be litigated separately.

#### 11. INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

(a) Upon execution of this Agreement and thereafter, Executive shall promptly and fully disclose to the Company, and with all necessary detail for a complete understanding of the same, all existing and future developments, know-how, discoveries, inventions, improvements, concepts, ideas, writings, formulae, processes and methods (whether copyrightable, patentable or otherwise) made, received, conceived, acquired or written during working hours, or otherwise, by Executive (whether or not at the request or upon the suggestion of the Company) during the period of his employment with, or rendering of advisory or consulting services to, the Company or any of its subsidiaries and affiliates, solely or jointly with others, in or relating to any activities of the Company or its subsidiaries and affiliates known to him as a consequence of his employment or the rendering of advisory and consulting services hereunder (collectively the "Subject Matter").

(b) Executive hereby assigns and transfers, and agrees to assign and transfer, to the Company, all his rights, title and interest in and to the Subject Matter, and Executive further agrees to deliver to the Company any and all drawings, notes, specifications and data relating to the Subject Matter, and to execute, acknowledge and deliver all such further papers, including applications for copyrights or patents, as may be necessary to obtain copyrights and patents for any thereof in any and all countries and to vest title thereto to the Company. Executive shall assist the Company in obtaining such copyrights or patents during the term of this Agreement, and at any time thereafter on reasonable notice and at mutually convenient times, and Executive agrees to testify in any prosecution or litigation involving any of the Subject Matter; provided, however, after the Term of Employment that Executive shall be compensated in a timely manner at the rate of \$250 per day (or portion thereof), plus out-of-pocket expenses incurred in rendering such assistance or giving or preparing to give such testimony if it is required after the termination of this Agreement.

#### 12. NON-DISCLOSURE OF CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

(a) Executive acknowledges that the Company possesses certain confidential and propriety information that has been or may be revealed to him or learned by Executive during the course of Executive's employment with the Company and that it would be unfair to use that information or knowledge to compete with or to otherwise disadvantage the Company. Executive shall not, during the Term of Employment or at any time following the Term of Employment, directly or indirectly, disclose or permit to be known (other than as is required in the regular course of his duties (including without limitation disclosures to the Company's advisors and consultants), as required by law (in which case Executive shall give the Company prior written notice of such required disclosure) or with the prior written consent of the Board of Directors, to any person, firm, corporation, or other entity, any confidential information acquired by him during the course of, or as an incident to, his employment or the rendering of his advisory or consulting services hereunder, relating to the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates, the

directors of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, any supplier or customer of the Company or any of their subsidiaries or affiliates, or any corporation, partnership or other entity owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by any of the foregoing, or in which any of the foregoing has a beneficial interest, including, but not limited to, the business affairs of each of the foregoing. Such confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to, proprietary technology, trade secrets, patented processes, research and development data, know-how, market studies and forecasts, financial data, competitive analyses, pricing policies, employee lists, personnel policies, the substance of agreements with customers, suppliers and others, marketing or dealership arrangements, servicing and training programs and arrangements, supplier lists, customer lists and any other documents embodying such confidential information. This confidentiality obligation shall not apply to any confidential information, which is or becomes publicly available other than pursuant to a breach of this paragraph 12(a) by Executive.

(b) All information and documents relating to the Company and its subsidiaries or affiliates as herein above described (or other business affairs) shall be the exclusive property of the Company, and Executive shall use commercially reasonable best efforts to prevent any publication or disclosure thereof. Upon termination of Executive's employment with the Company, all documents, records, reports, writings and other similar documents containing confidential information, including copies thereof then in Executive's possession or control shall be returned and left with the Company.

### 13. SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE

Executive agrees that if he breaches, or threatens to commit a breach of, any enforceable provision of paragraphs 10, 11 or 12 (the "Restrictive Covenants"), the Company shall have, in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other rights and remedies available to the Company under law and in equity, the right to have the Restrictive Covenants specifically enforced by a court of competent jurisdiction, it being agreed that any such breach or threatened breach of the Restrictive Covenants would cause irreparable injury to the Company and that money damages would not provide an adequate remedy to the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall constitute a waiver by Executive of his right to contest whether such a breach or threatened breach of any Restrictive Covenant has occurred. In the event of litigation between the parties to this Agreement regarding their respective rights and obligations under paragraphs 10, 11, or 12 hereof, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover from the other all attorneys' fees and expenses reasonably incurred in obtaining a ruling in the prevailing party's favor. Any such damages, attorneys' fees and costs shall be in addition to and not in lieu of any injunctive relief that may be available to the Company.

### 14. AMENDMENT OR ALTERATION

No amendment or alteration of the terms of this Agreement shall be valid unless made in writing and signed by both of the parties hereto.

15. GOVERNING LAW

This Agreement shall be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with the substantive laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, without regard to its principles of conflicts of laws.

16. SEVERABILITY

The holding of any provision of this Agreement to be invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction shall not affect any other provision of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect.

17. NOTICES

Any notices required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be sufficient if in writing, and if delivered by hand or courier, or sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, to the addresses set forth above or such other address as either party may from time to time designate in writing to the other, and shall be deemed given as of the date of the delivery or of the placement of the notice in the mail.

18. WAIVER OR BREACH

It is agreed that a waiver by either party of a breach of any provision of this Agreement shall not operate, or be construed as a waiver of any subsequent breach by that same party.

19. ENTIRE AGREEMENT AND BINDING EFFECT

This Agreement contains the entire agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective legal representatives, heirs, distributors, successors and assigns and supersedes any and all prior agreements between the parties whether oral or written. This Agreement may not be modified except upon further written agreement executed by both parties. Executive agrees that the Company may in its sole discretion, during the term of Executive's employment with the Company and thereafter, provide copies of this Agreement (or excerpts of the Agreement) to others, including businesses or entities that may employ, do business with, or consider employing Executive in the future. Executive further agrees that any subsequent change or changes in his duties, compensation or areas of responsibility shall in no way affect the validity of this Agreement or otherwise render inapplicable any of the provisions of paragraphs 10 through 13 of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect except as may be modified by a subsequent written agreement.

20. SURVIVAL

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the termination of Executive's employment hereunder or the expiration of this Agreement shall not affect the enforceability of paragraphs 7 through 26 hereof, which shall survive the termination or expiration.

## 21. RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES

Any and all disputes arising under or in connection with this Agreement shall be resolved in accordance with this paragraph 21 and paragraph 15.

The parties shall attempt to resolve any dispute, controversy or difference that may arise between them through good faith negotiations. In the event the parties fail to reach resolution of any such dispute within thirty (30) days after entering into negotiations, either party may proceed to institute action in any state or federal court located within the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, which courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction, and each party consents to the personal jurisdiction of any such state or federal court. Both parties waive their right to a trial by jury.

## 22. NON-DISPARAGEMENT

Executive agrees not to make disparaging, critical or otherwise detrimental comments to any person or entity concerning the Company, its officers, directors, trustees, and employees or the services or programs provided or to be provided by the Company and the Company agrees not to make any disparaging, critical or otherwise detrimental comments to any person or entity concerning Executive.

## 23. FURTHER ASSURANCES

The parties agree to execute and deliver all such further documents, agreements and instruments and take such other and further action as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and intent of this Agreement.

## 24. SUBSIDIARIES AND AFFILIATES

For purposes of this Agreement:

(a) “affiliate” means any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, the Company, and “control” means the power to exercise a controlling influence over the management or policies of an entity, unless such power is solely the result of an official position with such entity; and

(b) “subsidiary” means any corporation or other entity in which the Company has a direct or indirect ownership interest of 50% or more of the total combined voting power of the then outstanding securities or interests of such corporation or other entity entitled to vote generally in the election of directors (or similar governing body of a non-corporate entity) or in which the Company has the right to receive 50% or more of the distribution of profits or 50% or more of the assets on liquidation or dissolution.

25. HEADINGS

The paragraph headings appearing in this Agreement are for the purposes of easy reference and shall not be considered a part of this Agreement or in any way modify, amend or affect its provisions.

26. COUNTERPARTS

This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one and the same agreement.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement, under seal, as of the date and year first above written.

DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.

By: /s/ David A. Levin  
Name: David A. Levin  
Its: President, Chief Executive Officer

Date: December 22, 2017

By: /s/ Brian S. Reaves  
Name: Brian S. Reaves

Date: December 22, 2017

**EXHIBIT A**  
**FORM OF RELEASE**

**GENERAL RELEASE OF CLAIMS**

1. Brian S. Reaves (“Executive”), for himself and his family, heirs, executors, administrators, legal representatives and their respective successors and assigns, in exchange for good and valuable consideration to be paid after the date of his termination as set forth in the Employment Agreement to which this release is attached as Exhibit A (the “Employment Agreement”), does hereby release and forever discharge Destination XL Group, Inc. (the “Company”), its subsidiaries, affiliated companies, successors and assigns, and their respective current or former directors, officers, employees, shareholders or agents in such capacities (collectively with the Company, the “Released Parties”) from any and all actions, causes of action, suits, controversies, claims and demands whatsoever, for or by reason of any matter, cause or thing whatsoever, whether known or unknown including, but not limited to, all claims under any applicable laws arising under or in connection with Executive’s employment or termination thereof, whether for tort, breach of express or implied employment contract, wrongful discharge, intentional infliction of emotional distress, or defamation or injuries incurred on the job or incurred as a result of loss of employment. Executive acknowledges that the Company encouraged him to consult with an attorney of his choosing, and through this General Release of Claims encourages him to consult with his attorney with respect to possible claims under the Age Discrimination in Employment Act (“ADEA”) and that he understands that the ADEA is a Federal statute that, among other things, prohibits discrimination on the basis of age in employment and employee benefits and benefit plans. Without limiting the generality of the release provided above, Executive expressly waives any and all claims under ADEA that he may have as of the date hereof. Executive further understands that by signing this General Release of Claims he is in fact waiving, releasing and forever giving up any claim under the ADEA as well as all other laws within the scope of this paragraph 1 that may have existed on or prior to the date hereof. Notwithstanding anything in this paragraph 1 to the contrary, this General Release of Claims shall not apply to (i) any rights to receive any payments pursuant to paragraph 7 of the Employment Agreement, or any accrued but unpaid benefits under any employee benefit plan maintained by the Company (ii) any rights or claims that may arise as a result of events occurring after the date this General Release of Claims is executed, (iii) any indemnification rights Executive may have as a former officer or director of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliated companies, (iv) any claims for benefits under any directors’ and officers’ liability policy maintained by the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliated companies in accordance with the terms of such policy, (v) any rights as a holder of equity securities of the Company, and (vi) any rights or claims that, by law, may not be waived, including claims for unemployment compensation and workers’ compensation. Nothing contained in this Agreement prevents you from filing a charge, cooperating with or participating in any investigation or proceeding before any federal or state Fair Employment Practices Agency, including, without limitation, the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, except that you acknowledge that you will not be able to recover any monetary benefits in connection with any such claim, charge or proceeding.

2. Executive represents that he has not filed against the Released Parties any complaints, charges, or lawsuits arising out of his employment, or any other matter arising on or prior to the date of this General Release of Claims, and covenants and agrees that he will never individually or with any person file, or commence the filing of, any charges, lawsuits, complaints or proceedings with any governmental agency, or against the Released Parties with respect to any of the matters released by Executive pursuant to paragraph 1 hereof (a "Proceeding"); provided, however, Executive shall not have relinquished his right to commence a Proceeding to challenge whether Executive knowingly and voluntarily waived his rights under ADEA.

3. Executive hereby acknowledges that the Company has informed him that he has up to twenty-one (21) days to sign this General Release of Claims and he may knowingly and voluntarily waive that twenty-one (21) day period by signing this General Release of Claims earlier. Executive also understands that he shall have seven (7) days following the date on which he signs this General Release of Claims within which to revoke it by providing a written notice of his revocation to the Company.

4. Executive acknowledges that this General Release of Claims will be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the internal laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts applicable to contracts made and to be performed entirely within such State.

5. Executive acknowledges that he has read this General Release of Claims, that he has been advised that he should consult with an attorney before he executes this general release of claims, and that he understands all of its terms and executes it voluntarily and with full knowledge of its significance and the consequences thereof.

6. This General Release of Claims shall take effect on the eighth day following Executive's execution of this General Release of Claims unless Executive's written revocation is delivered to the Company within seven (7) days after such execution.

---

Brian S. Reaves

## EMPLOYMENT AGREEMENT

This Employment Agreement ("Agreement") is made as of November 27, 2017 between DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC., a Delaware corporation with an office at 555 Turnpike Street, Canton, Massachusetts, 02021 (the "Company" which term includes any affiliates and subsidiaries), and Anthony J. Gaeta (the "Executive") having an address at 65 Ogden Street, Providence, Rhode Island 02906.

### WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, the Company desires that Executive serve as Senior Vice President, Store Sales and Operations and Executive desires to be so employed by the Company.

WHEREAS, Executive and the Company desire to set forth in writing the terms and conditions of the Executive's employment with the Company from the date hereof.

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the promises and the mutual promises, representations and covenants herein contained, the parties hereto agree as follows:

1. EMPLOYMENT

The Company hereby employs Executive and Executive hereby accepts such employment, subject to the terms and conditions herein set forth. Executive shall hold the office of Senior Vice President, Store Sales and Operations.

2. TERM

The term of employment under this Agreement (the "Term of Employment") shall begin on the date set forth above (the "Effective Date") and shall continue until terminated by either party as hereinafter set forth.

3. COMPENSATION

(a) During the Term of Employment, as compensation for the employment services to be rendered by Executive hereunder, the Company agrees to pay to Executive, and Executive agrees to accept, payable in equal bi-weekly installments in accordance with Company practice, an annual base salary of Two Hundred and Eighty-Five Thousand Dollars and 00/100 Cents (\$285,000.00) (the "Base Salary"). The Base Salary shall be reviewed at least annually to ascertain whether, in the judgment of the Company, such Base Salary should be adjusted. If so, the adjusted Base Salary shall be adjusted for all purposes of this Agreement.

(b) In addition to the Base Salary, during the Term of Employment, Executive is eligible to participate in the Company's Annual Incentive Plan. Such incentive shall be determined and payable in accordance with the Company's incentive program in effect at the time, subject to change from year to year in the Company's sole discretion. Executive will

---

participate in the Company's incentive program and Executive's target bonus under such plan (if all individual and Company performance conditions are met) shall be 40% of Executive's actual annual base earnings (which shall be the total Base Salary as may be paid during the fiscal year ("Base Earnings")). The actual award under the incentive program, if any, may be more or less than the target and will be based on Executive's performance and the performance of the Company and payment will be made in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions of the incentive program then in effect.

(c) In addition, during the Term of Employment, Executive is eligible to participate in the Company's Long-Term Incentive Plan ("LTIP"). Such incentive shall be determined and distributable in accordance with and subject to the terms and conditions as described in the LTIP documents in effect at the time of the award, subject to change from year to year in the Compensation Committee's sole discretion. Executive will participate in the Company's LTIP at a target incentive rate of 70% of Executive's Base Salary in effect on the Executive's Effective Date of Participation, for the incentive period, based upon the Company's targeted performance as defined in the LTIP documents in effect at the time of the award.

#### 4. EXPENSES

The Company shall pay or reimburse Executive, in accordance with the Company's policies and procedures and upon presentment of suitable vouchers, for all reasonable business and travel expenses, which may be incurred or paid by Executive during the Term of Employment in connection with Executive's employment hereunder. Executive shall comply with such restrictions and shall keep such records as the Company may reasonably deem necessary to meet the requirements of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended from time to time, and regulations promulgated thereunder.

#### 5. OTHER BENEFITS

(a) During the Term of Employment, Executive shall be entitled to such vacations and to participate in and receive any other benefits customarily provided by the Company to its management (including any profit sharing, pension, 401(k), short and long-term disability insurance, medical and dental insurance and group life insurance plans in accordance with and subject to the terms of such plans, including, without limitation, any eligibility requirements contained therein), all as determined from time to time by the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors in its discretion.

(b) The Company will, during the Term of Employment, provide Executive with an automobile allowance in the total amount of Eight Thousand Four Hundred Dollars and 00/100 Cents (\$8,400.00) annually, in equal bi-weekly payments in accordance with the Company's normal payroll practices. Executive shall pay and be responsible for all insurance, repairs and maintenance costs associated with operating the automobile. Executive is responsible for Executive's gasoline, unless the gasoline expense is reimbursable under the Company's policies and procedures.

(c) Executive will be eligible to participate in the Company's annual performance appraisal process.

6. DUTIES

(a) Executive shall perform such duties and functions consistent with the position of Senior Vice President, Store Sales and Operations and/or as the Company shall from time to time determine and Executive shall comply in the performance of Executive's duties with the policies of, and be subject to the direction of the Company.

(b) During the Term of Employment, Executive shall devote substantially all of his or her time and attention, vacation time and absences for sickness excepted, to the business of the Company, as necessary to fulfill Executive's duties. Executive shall perform the duties assigned to him or her with fidelity and to the best of Executive's ability. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, and subject to the foregoing, Executive shall not be prevented from accepting positions in outside organizations so long as such activities do not interfere with Executive's performance of Executive's duties hereunder and do not violate paragraph 10 hereof.

(c) The principal location at which the Executive shall perform Executive's duties hereunder shall be at the Company's offices in Canton, Massachusetts or at such other location as may be temporarily designated from time to time by the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, Executive shall perform such services at such other locations as may be required for the proper performance of Executive's duties hereunder, and Executive recognizes that such duties may involve travel.

7. TERMINATION OF EMPLOYMENT; EFFECT OF TERMINATION

(a) The Term of Employment may be terminated by the Company at any time:

(i) upon the determination by the Company that Executive's performance of his duties has not been fully satisfactory for any reason which would not constitute justifiable cause (as hereinafter defined) or for other business reasons necessitating termination which do not constitute justifiable cause, in either case upon thirty (30) days' prior written notice to Executive; or

(ii) upon the determination of the Company that there is justifiable cause (as hereinafter defined) for such termination.

(b) The Term of Employment shall terminate upon:

(i) the death of Executive;

(ii) the date on which the Company elects to terminate the Term of Employment by reason of the "disability" of Executive (as hereinafter defined in subsection (c) herein) pursuant to subsection (g) hereof; or

(iii) Executive's resignation of employment.

(c) For the purposes of this Agreement, the term "disability" shall mean Executive is physically or mentally incapacitated so as to render Executive incapable of performing the essentials of Executive's job, even with reasonable accommodation, as reasonably determined by the Company, which determination shall be final and binding.

(d) For the purposes hereof, the term "justifiable cause" shall mean: any failure or refusal to perform any of the duties pursuant to this Agreement or any breach of this Agreement by the Executive; Executive's breach of any material written policies, rules or regulations which have been adopted by the Company; Executive's repeated failure to perform Executive's duties in a satisfactory manner; Executive's performance of any act or Executive's failure to act, as to which if Executive were prosecuted and convicted, a crime or offense involving money or property of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, or a crime or offense constituting a felony in the jurisdiction involved, would have occurred; any unauthorized disclosure by Executive to any person, firm or corporation of any confidential information or trade secret of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates; any attempt by Executive to secure any personal profit in connection with the business of the Company or any of its subsidiaries and affiliates; or the engaging by Executive in any business other than the business of the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates which interferes with the performance of Executive's duties hereunder. Upon termination of Executive's employment for justifiable cause, Executive shall not be entitled to any amounts or benefits hereunder other than such portion of Executive's Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 5 hereof as have been accrued through the date of Executive's termination of employment.

(e) If the Company terminates this Agreement without "justifiable cause" as provided in subsection 7(a)(i), the Company shall pay Executive his or her then current base salary for five months after the effectiveness of such termination, payable in equal payments in accordance with the Company's customary payroll practices commencing with the first payroll period that begins at least 30 days after the termination of the Executive's Term of Employment conditioned upon the Executive having provided the Company with an executed general release in the form attached hereto as Exhibit A (the "General Release") and the time for Executive's revocation of the General Release having expired. Such payments shall be made in accordance with the Company's customary payroll practices until paid in full. Any payment pursuant to this paragraph 7(e) is contingent upon Executive's execution of the General Release within 21 days after termination of the Term of Employment (and the Executive's not revoking that General Release) and will be in lieu of payments to which Executive might have been entitled under any other severance plan of the Company.

(f) If Executive shall die during the term of Executive's employment hereunder, this Agreement shall terminate immediately. In such event, the estate of Executive shall thereupon be entitled to receive such portion of Executive's base annual salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 as have been accrued through the date of Executive's death.

(g) Upon Executive's "disability", the Company shall have the right to terminate Executive's employment. Any termination pursuant to this subsection (g) shall be effective on

the earlier of (i) the date 30 days after which Executive shall have received written notice of the Company's election to terminate or (ii) the date Executive begins to receive long-term disability insurance benefits under the policy provided by the Company pursuant to paragraph 5 hereof.

(h) Upon the resignation of Executive in any capacity, that resignation will be deemed to be a resignation from all offices and positions that Executive holds with respect to the Company and any of its subsidiaries and affiliates. In the event of Executive's resignation, Executive shall be entitled only to receive such portion of Executive's annual Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 as have been accrued through the date of Executive's resignation.

(i) **Change of Control.** In the event the Term of Employment is terminated by the Company without justifiable cause (as defined herein) or Executive resigns with Good Reason (as defined herein) within one (1) year following a Change of Control of the Company has occurred, then, in such event, the Company shall pay Executive an amount equal to twelve (12) months of Executive's highest Base Salary in effect at any time during the six (6) month period ending on the date of the Change of Control. For the purposes of the foregoing, Change of Control shall have the meaning set forth in the Company's 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan (without regard to any subsequent amendments thereto). For purposes of the foregoing, "*Good Reason*" means the occurrence of any of the following: (i) a material diminution in the Executive's base compensation; (ii) a material diminution in the Executive's authority, duties, or responsibilities; (iii) a material change in the geographic location at which the Executive must perform the services under this Agreement; or (iv) any other action or inaction that constitutes a material breach by the Company of this Agreement. For purposes of this provision, Good Reason shall not be deemed to exist unless the Executive's termination of employment for Good Reason occurs within 2 years following the initial existence of one of the conditions specified in clauses (i) through (iv) above, the Executive provides the Company with written notice of the existence of such condition within 90 days after the initial existence of the condition, and the Company fails to remedy the condition within 30 days after its receipt of such notice. The Company shall pay the amount required under this paragraph 7(i) in a single payment thirty (30) days after termination of the Term of Employment, subject to and conditioned upon the Executive's execution of the General Release required pursuant to paragraph 7(k) hereof and such release becoming irrevocable. Any payments made pursuant to this paragraph 7(i) will be in lieu of payments to which Executive might have been entitled under paragraph 7(e) of this Agreement or under any other severance plan of the Company. The payments under this Agreement shall be reduced if and to the extent necessary to avoid any payments or benefits to Executive being treated as "excess parachute payments" within the meaning of Internal Revenue Code Section 280G(b)(i).

(j) **Clawback of Certain Compensation and Benefits.** If, after the termination of the Term of Employment for any reason other than by the Company for "justifiable cause":

(i) it is determined in good faith by the Company within twelve (12) months after the termination of the Term of Employment (the "Termination Date") that the Executive's employment could have been terminated by the Company for justifiable cause under paragraph 7(d) hereof (unless the Company knew or should have known that as of the Termination Date, the Executive's employment could have been terminated for justifiable cause in accordance with paragraph 7(d) hereof); or

(ii) the Executive breaches any of the provisions of paragraph 10, then, in addition to any other remedy that may be available to the Company in law or equity and/or pursuant to any other provisions of this Agreement, the Executive's employment shall be deemed to have been terminated for justifiable cause retroactively to the Termination Date and the Executive also shall be subject to the following provisions:

(A) the Executive shall be required to pay to the Company, immediately upon written demand by the Company, all amounts paid to Executive by the Company, whether or not pursuant to this Agreement (other than such portion of Executive's Base Salary and reimbursement of expenses pursuant to paragraph 4 hereof as have been accrued through the date of the termination of the Term of Employment), on or after the Termination Date (including the pre-tax cost to the Company of any benefits that are in excess of the total amount that the Company would have been required to pay to the Executive if the Executive's employment with the Company had been terminated by the Company for justifiable cause in accordance with paragraph 7(d) above);

(B) all vested and unvested Awards (as that term is defined in the 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan) then held by the Executive shall immediately expire; and

(C) the Executive shall be required to pay to the Company, immediately upon written demand by the Company, an amount equal to any Gains resulting from the exercise or payment of any Awards (as that term is defined in the 2016 Incentive Compensation Plan) at any time on or after, or during the one year period prior to, the Termination Date. For these purposes, the term "Gain" shall mean (i) in the case of each stock option or stock appreciation right ("SAR"), the difference between the fair market value per share of the Company's common stock underlying such option or SAR as of the date on which the Executive exercised the option or SAR, less the exercise price or grant price of the option or SAR; and (ii) in the case of any Award other than a stock option or SAR that is satisfied by the issuance of Common Stock of the Company, the value of such stock on the Termination Date, and (iii) in the case of any Award other than a stock option or SAR, that is satisfied in cash or any property other than Common Stock of the Company, the amount of cash and the value of the property on the payment date paid to satisfy the Award.

(k) Any payment pursuant to paragraph 7(e) or 7(i) shall be contingent upon Executive's execution of the General Release within 21 days after termination of the Term of Employment, and the Executive's not revoking that release.

#### 8. COMPLIANCE WITH SECTION 409A

(a) General. It is the intention of both the Company and the Executive that the benefits and rights to which the Executive could be entitled pursuant to this Agreement comply with Section 409A of the Code and the Treasury Regulations and other guidance promulgated or issued thereunder ("Section 409A"), to the extent that the requirements of Section 409A are applicable thereto, and the provisions of this Agreement shall be construed in a manner consistent with that intention. If the Executive or the Company believes, at any time, that any such benefit or right that is subject to Section 409A does not so comply, it shall promptly advise the other and shall negotiate reasonably and in good faith to amend the timing of such benefits and rights such that they comply with Section 409A (with the most limited possible economic effect on the Executive).

(b) Distributions on Account of Separation from Service. If and to the extent required to comply with Section 409A, no payment or benefit required to be paid under this Agreement on account of termination of the Executive's employment shall be made unless and until the Executive incurs a "separation from service" within the meaning of Section 409A.

(c) 6 Month Delay for "Specified Employees".

(i) If the Executive is a "specified employee", then no payment or benefit that is payable on account of the Executive's "separation from service", as that term is defined for purposes of Section 409A, shall be made before the date that is six months after the Executive's "separation from service" (or, if earlier, the date of the Executive's death) if and to the extent that such payment or benefit constitutes deferred compensation (or may be nonqualified deferred compensation) under Section 409A and such deferral is required to comply with the requirements of Section 409A. Any payment or benefit delayed by reason of the prior sentence shall be paid out or provided in a single lump sum at the end of such required delay period in order to catch up to the original payment schedule. There shall be added to any payments that are delayed pursuant to this provision interest at the prime rate as reported in the Wall Street Journal for the date of the Executive's separation from service. Such interest shall be calculated from the date on which the payment otherwise would have been made until the date on which the payment is made.

(ii) For purposes of this provision, the Executive shall be considered to be a "specified employee" if, at the time of his or her separation from service, the Executive is a "key employee", within the meaning of Section 416(i) of the Code, of the Company (or any person or entity with whom the Company would be considered a single employer under Section 414(b) or Section 414(c) of the Code) any stock in which is publicly traded on an established securities market or otherwise.

(d) No Acceleration of Payments. Neither the Company nor the Executive, individually or in combination, may accelerate any payment or benefit that is subject to Section 409A, except in compliance with Section 409A and the provisions of this Agreement, and no amount that is subject to Section 409A shall be paid prior to the earliest date on which it may be paid without violating Section 409A.

(e) Treatment of Each Installment as a Separate Payment. For purposes of applying the provisions of Section 409A to this Agreement, each separately identified amount to which the Executive is entitled under this Agreement shall be treated as a separate payment. In addition, to the extent permissible under Section 409A, any series of installment payments under this Agreement shall be treated as a right to a series of separate payments.

(f) Taxable Reimbursements.

(i) Any reimbursements by the Company to the Executive of any eligible expenses under this Agreement that are not excludable from the Executive's income for Federal income tax purposes (the "Taxable Reimbursements") shall be made by no later than the earlier of the date on which they would be paid under the Company's normal policies and the last day of the taxable year of the Executive following the year in which the expense was incurred.

(ii) The amount of any Taxable Reimbursements to be provided to the Executive during any taxable year of the Executive shall not affect the expenses eligible for reimbursement to be provided in any other taxable year of the Executive.

(iii) The right to Taxable Reimbursements shall not be subject to liquidation or exchange for another benefit.

9. REPRESENTATION AND AGREEMENTS OF EXECUTIVE

(a) Executive represents and warrants that Executive is free to enter into this Agreement and to perform the duties required hereunder, and that there are no employment contracts or understandings, restrictive covenants or other restrictions, whether written or oral, preventing the performance of Executive's duties hereunder.

(b) Executive agrees to submit to a medical examination and to cooperate and supply such other information and documents as may be required by any insurance company in connection with the Company's obtaining life insurance on the life of Executive, and any other type of insurance or fringe benefit as the Company shall determine from time to time to obtain.

(c) Executive represents and warrants that Executive has never been convicted of a felony and Executive has not been convicted or incarcerated for a misdemeanor within the past five years, other than a first conviction for drunkenness, simple assault, speeding, minor traffic violations, affray, or disturbance of the peace.

(d) Executive represents and warrants that Executive has never been a party to any judicial or administrative proceeding that resulted in a judgement, decree, or final order (i) enjoining him or her from future violations of, or prohibiting any violations of any federal or state securities law, or (ii) finding any violations of any federal or state securities law.

(e) Executive represents and warrants that Executive has never been accused of any impropriety in connection with any employment;

Any breach of any of the above representations and warranties is "justifiable cause" for termination under paragraph 7(d) of this Agreement.

10. NON-COMPETITION

(a) Executive agrees that during the Term of Employment and during the one (1) year period immediately following the Termination Date (the "Non-Competitive Period"), Executive shall not, directly or indirectly, as owner, partner, joint venturer, stockholder, employee, broker, agent, principal, trustee, corporate officer, director, licensor, or in any capacity whatsoever, engage in, become financially interested in, be employed by, render any consultation or business advice with respect to, accept any competitive business on behalf of, or have any connection with any business which is competitive with products or services of the Company or any subsidiaries and affiliates, in any geographic area in which the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates are then conducting or proposing to conduct business, including, without

limitation, the United States of America and its possessions, Canada and Europe; provided, however, that Executive may own any securities of any corporation which is engaged in such business and is publicly owned and traded but in an amount not to exceed at any one time one percent (1%) of any class of stock or securities of such corporation. In addition, Executive shall not, during the Non-Competitive Period, directly or indirectly, request or cause any suppliers or customers with whom the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates has a business relationship to cancel or terminate any such business relationship with the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates or otherwise compromise the Company's good will or solicit, hire, interfere with or entice from the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates any employee (or former employee who has been separated from service for less than 12 months) of the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates.

(b) If any portion of the restrictions set forth in this paragraph 10 should, for any reason whatsoever, be declared invalid by a court of competent jurisdiction, the validity or enforceability of the remainder of such restrictions shall not thereby be adversely affected. For the purposes of this paragraph 10, a business competitive with the products and services of the Company (or such subsidiaries and affiliates) is limited to a specialty retailer which primarily distributes, sells or markets so-called "big and tall" apparel of any kind for men or which utilizes the "big and tall" retail or wholesale marketing concept as part of its business.

(c) Executive acknowledges that the Company conducts business throughout the world, that Executive's duties and responsibilities on behalf of the Company are of a worldwide nature, that its sales and marketing prospects are for continued expansion throughout the world and therefore, the territorial and time limitations set forth in this paragraph 10 are reasonable and properly required for the adequate protection of the business of the Company and its subsidiaries and affiliates. In the event any such territorial or time limitation is deemed to be unreasonable by a court of competent jurisdiction, Executive agrees to the reduction of the territorial or time limitation to the area or period which such court shall deem reasonable.

(d) The existence of any claim or cause of action (a claim or cause of action is defined as a claim or cause of action which results from a breach of the terms and provisions of this Agreement by the Company, regardless of whether the breach is material) by Executive against the Company or any subsidiary or affiliate shall not constitute a defense to the enforcement by the Company or any subsidiary or affiliate of the foregoing restrictive covenants, but such claim or cause of action shall be litigated separately.

#### 11. INVENTIONS AND DISCOVERIES

(a) Upon execution of this Agreement and thereafter, Executive shall promptly and fully disclose to the Company, and with all necessary detail for a complete understanding of the same, all existing and future developments, know-how, discoveries, inventions, improvements, concepts, ideas, writings, formulae, processes and methods (whether copyrightable, patentable or otherwise) made, received, conceived, acquired or written during working hours, or otherwise, by Executive (whether or not at the request or upon the suggestion of the Company) during the period of Executive's employment with, or rendering of advisory or consulting services to, the Company or any of its subsidiaries and affiliates, solely or jointly with others, in or relating to

any activities of the Company or its subsidiaries and affiliates known to him or her as a consequence of Executive's employment or the rendering of advisory and consulting services hereunder (collectively the "Subject Matter").

(b) Executive hereby assigns and transfers, and agrees to assign and transfer, to the Company, all Executive's rights, title and interest in and to the Subject Matter, and Executive further agrees to deliver to the Company any and all drawings, notes, specifications and data relating to the Subject Matter, and to execute, acknowledge and deliver all such further papers, including applications for copyrights or patents, as may be necessary to obtain copyrights and patents for any thereof in any and all countries and to vest title thereto to the Company. Executive shall assist the Company in obtaining such copyrights or patents during the term of this Agreement, and at any time thereafter on reasonable notice and at mutually convenient times, and Executive agrees to testify in any prosecution or litigation involving any of the Subject Matter; provided, however, after the Term of Employment that Executive shall be compensated in a timely manner at the rate of \$250 per day (or portion thereof), plus out-of-pocket expenses incurred in rendering such assistance or giving or preparing to give such testimony if it is required after the termination of this Agreement.

## 12. NON-DISCLOSURE OF CONFIDENTIAL INFORMATION

(a) Executive acknowledges that the Company possesses certain confidential and propriety information that has been or may be revealed to him or her or learned by Executive during the course of Executive's employment with the Company and that it would be unfair to use that information or knowledge to compete with or to otherwise disadvantage the Company. Executive shall not, during the Term of Employment or at any time following the Term of Employment, directly or indirectly, disclose or permit to be known (other than as is required in the regular course of Executive's duties (including without limitation disclosures to the Company's advisors and consultants), as required by law (in which case Executive shall give the Company prior written notice of such required disclosure) or with the prior written consent of the Board of Directors, to any person, firm, corporation, or other entity, any confidential information acquired by him or her during the course of, or as an incident to, Executive's employment or the rendering of Executive's advisory or consulting services hereunder, relating to the Company or any of its subsidiaries or affiliates, the directors of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliates, any supplier or customer of the Company or any of their subsidiaries or affiliates, or any corporation, partnership or other entity owned or controlled, directly or indirectly, by any of the foregoing, or in which any of the foregoing has a beneficial interest, including, but not limited to, the business affairs of each of the foregoing. Such confidential information shall include, but shall not be limited to, proprietary technology, trade secrets, patented processes, research and development data, know-how, market studies and forecasts, financial data, competitive analyses, pricing policies, employee lists, personnel policies, the substance of agreements with customers, suppliers and others, marketing or dealership arrangements, servicing and training programs and arrangements, supplier lists, customer lists and any other documents embodying such confidential information. This confidentiality obligation shall not apply to any confidential information, which is or becomes publicly available other than pursuant to a breach of this paragraph 12(a) by Executive.

(b) All information and documents relating to the Company and its subsidiaries or affiliates as herein above described (or other business affairs) shall be the exclusive property of the Company, and Executive shall use commercially reasonable best efforts to prevent any publication or disclosure thereof. Upon termination of Executive's employment with the Company, all documents, records, reports, writings and other similar documents containing confidential information, including copies thereof then in Executive's possession or control shall be returned and left with the Company.

13. SPECIFIC PERFORMANCE

Executive agrees that if Executive breaches, or threatens to commit a breach of, any enforceable provision of paragraphs 10, 11 or 12 (the "Restrictive Covenants"), the Company shall have, in addition to, and not in lieu of, any other rights and remedies available to the Company under law and in equity, the right to have the Restrictive Covenants specifically enforced by a court of competent jurisdiction, it being agreed that any such breach or threatened breach of the Restrictive Covenants would cause irreparable injury to the Company and that money damages would not provide an adequate remedy to the Company. Notwithstanding the foregoing, nothing herein shall constitute a waiver by Executive of Executive's right to contest whether such a breach or threatened breach of any Restrictive Covenant has occurred. In the event of litigation between the parties to this Agreement regarding their respective rights and obligations under paragraphs 10, 11, or 12 hereof, the prevailing party shall be entitled to recover from the other all attorneys' fees and expenses reasonably incurred in obtaining a ruling in the prevailing party's favor. Any such damages, attorneys' fees and costs shall be in addition to and not in lieu of any injunctive relief that may be available to the Company.

14. AMENDMENT OR ALTERATION

No amendment or alteration of the terms of this Agreement shall be valid unless made in writing and signed by both of the parties hereto.

15. GOVERNING LAW

This Agreement shall be governed by, and construed and enforced in accordance with the substantive laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, without regard to its principles of conflicts of laws.

16. SEVERABILITY

The holding of any provision of this Agreement to be invalid or unenforceable by a court of competent jurisdiction shall not affect any other provision of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect.

17. NOTICES

Any notices required or permitted to be given hereunder shall be sufficient if in writing, and if delivered by hand or courier, or sent by certified mail, return receipt requested, to the addresses set forth above or such other address as either party may from time to time designate in writing to the other, and shall be deemed given as of the date of the delivery or of the placement of the notice in the mail.

18. WAIVER OR BREACH

It is agreed that a waiver by either party of a breach of any provision of this Agreement shall not operate, or be construed as a waiver of any subsequent breach by that same party.

19. ENTIRE AGREEMENT AND BINDING EFFECT

This Agreement contains the entire agreement of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective legal representatives, heirs, distributors, successors and assigns and supersedes any and all prior agreements between the parties whether oral or written. This Agreement may not be modified except upon further written agreement executed by both parties. Executive agrees that the Company may in its sole discretion, during the term of Executive's employment with the Company and thereafter, provide copies of this Agreement (or excerpts of the Agreement) to others, including businesses or entities that may employ, do business with, or consider employing Executive in the future. Executive further agrees that any subsequent change or changes in Executive's duties, compensation or areas of responsibility shall in no way affect the validity of this Agreement or otherwise render inapplicable any of the provisions of paragraphs 10 through 13 of this Agreement, which shall remain in full force and effect except as may be modified by a subsequent written agreement.

20. SURVIVAL

Except as otherwise expressly provided herein, the termination of Executive's employment hereunder or the expiration of this Agreement shall not affect the enforceability of paragraphs 7 through 26 hereof, which shall survive the termination or expiration.

21. RESOLUTION OF DISPUTES

Any and all disputes arising under or in connection with this Agreement shall be resolved in accordance with this paragraph 21 and paragraph 15.

The parties shall attempt to resolve any dispute, controversy or difference that may arise between them through good faith negotiations. In the event the parties fail to reach resolution of any such dispute within thirty (30) days after entering into negotiations, either party may proceed to institute action in any state or federal court located within the Commonwealth of Massachusetts, which courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction, and each party consents to the personal jurisdiction of any such state or federal court. Both parties waive their right to a trial by jury.

22. NON-DISPARAGEMENT

Executive agrees not to make disparaging, critical or otherwise detrimental comments to any person or entity concerning the Company, its officers, directors, trustees, and employees or the services or programs provided or to be provided by the Company and the Company agrees not to make any disparaging, critical or otherwise detrimental comments to any person or entity concerning Executive.

23. FURTHER ASSURANCES

The parties agree to execute and deliver all such further documents, agreements and instruments and take such other and further action as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out the purposes and intent of this Agreement.

24. SUBSIDIARIES AND AFFILIATES

For purposes of this Agreement:

(a) “affiliate” means any entity that controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with, the Company, and “control” means the power to exercise a controlling influence over the management or policies of an entity, unless such power is solely the result of an official position with such entity; and

(b) “subsidiary” means any corporation or other entity in which the Company has a direct or indirect ownership interest of 50% or more of the total combined voting power of the then outstanding securities or interests of such corporation or other entity entitled to vote generally in the election of directors (or similar governing body of a non-corporate entity) or in which the Company has the right to receive 50% or more of the distribution of profits or 50% or more of the assets on liquidation or dissolution.

25. HEADINGS

The paragraph headings appearing in this Agreement are for the purposes of easy reference and shall not be considered a part of this Agreement or in any way modify, amend or affect its provisions.

26. COUNTERPARTS

This Agreement may be executed in one or more counterparts, each of which shall be deemed an original and all of which together shall constitute one and the same agreement.

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have executed this Agreement, under seal, as of the date and year first above written.

DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.

By: /s/ David A. Levin  
Name: David A. Levin  
Its: President, Chief Executive Officer

Date: December 22, 2017

By: /s/ Anthony J. Gaeta  
Name: Anthony J. Gaeta

Date: December 27, 2017

**EXHIBIT A  
FORM OF RELEASE**

**GENERAL RELEASE OF CLAIMS**

1. [INSERT EXECUTIVE'S NAME] ("Executive"), for him- or herself and his or her family, heirs, executors, administrators, legal representatives and their respective successors and assigns, in exchange for good and valuable consideration to be paid after the date of Executive's termination as set forth in the Employment Agreement to which this release is attached as Exhibit A (the "Employment Agreement"), does hereby release and forever discharge Destination XL Group, Inc. (the "Company"), its subsidiaries, affiliated companies, successors and assigns, and their respective current or former directors, officers, employees, shareholders or agents in such capacities (collectively with the Company, the "Released Parties") from any and all actions, causes of action, suits, controversies, claims and demands whatsoever, for or by reason of any matter, cause or thing whatsoever, whether known or unknown including, but not limited to, all claims under any applicable laws arising under or in connection with Executive's employment or termination thereof, whether for tort, breach of express or implied employment contract, wrongful discharge, intentional infliction of emotional distress, or defamation or injuries incurred on the job or incurred as a result of loss of employment. Executive acknowledges that the Company encouraged Executive to consult with an attorney of Executive's choosing, and through this General Release of Claims encourages Executive to consult with his or her attorney with respect to possible claims under the Age Discrimination in Employment Act ("ADEA") and that Executive understands that the ADEA is a Federal statute that, among other things, prohibits discrimination on the basis of age in employment and employee benefits and benefit plans. Without limiting the generality of the release provided above, Executive expressly waives any and all claims under ADEA that he or she may have as of the date hereof. Executive further understands that by signing this General Release of Claims he or she is in fact waiving, releasing and forever giving up any claim under the ADEA as well as all other laws within the scope of this paragraph 1 that may have existed on or prior to the date hereof. Notwithstanding anything in this paragraph 1 to the contrary, this General Release of Claims shall not apply to (i) any rights to receive any payments pursuant to paragraph 7 of the Employment Agreement, or any accrued but unpaid benefits under any employee benefit plan maintained by the Company (ii) any rights or claims that may arise as a result of events occurring after the date this General Release of Claims is executed, (iii) any indemnification rights Executive may have as a former officer or director of the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliated companies, (iv) any claims for benefits under any directors' and officers' liability policy maintained by the Company or its subsidiaries or affiliated companies in accordance with the terms of such policy, (v) any rights as a holder of equity securities of the Company, and (vi) any rights or claims that, by law, may not be waived, including claims for unemployment compensation and workers' compensation. Nothing contained in this Agreement prevents Executive from filing a charge, cooperating with or participating in any investigation or proceeding before any federal or state Fair Employment Practices Agency, including, without limitation, the Equal Employment Opportunity Commission, except that Executive acknowledges that he or she will not be able to recover any monetary benefits in connection with any such claim, charge or proceeding.

2. Executive represents that he or she has not filed against the Released Parties any complaints, charges, or lawsuits arising out of his or her employment, or any other matter arising on or prior to the date of this General Release of Claims, and covenants and agrees that he or she will never individually or with any person file, or commence the filing of, any charges, lawsuits, complaints or proceedings with any governmental agency, or against the Released Parties with respect to any of the matters released by Executive pursuant to paragraph 1 hereof (a "Proceeding"); provided, however, Executive shall not have relinquished his or her right to commence a Proceeding to challenge whether Executive knowingly and voluntarily waived his or her rights under ADEA.

3. Executive hereby acknowledges that the Company has informed him or her that he or she has up to twenty-one (21) days to sign this General Release of Claims and he or she may knowingly and voluntarily waive that twenty-one (21) day period by signing this General Release of Claims earlier. Executive also understands that he or she shall have seven (7) days following the date on which he or she signs this General Release of Claims within which to revoke it by providing a written notice of his or her revocation to the Company.

4. Executive acknowledges that this General Release of Claims will be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the internal laws of the Commonwealth of Massachusetts applicable to contracts made and to be performed entirely within the Commonwealth.

5. Executive acknowledges that he or she has read this General Release of Claims, has been advised that he or she should consult with an attorney before executing this general release of claims, and that he or she understands all of its terms and executes it voluntarily and with full knowledge of its significance and the consequences thereof.

6. This General Release of Claims shall take effect on the eighth day following Executive's execution of this General Release of Claims unless Executive's written revocation is delivered to the Company within seven (7) days after such execution.

---

Anthony J. Gaeta

DESTINATION XL GROUP, INC.  
Wholly-owned unless otherwise indicated

<u>Subsidiary:</u>	<u>Place of Incorporation:</u>
Casual Male Retail Store, LLC (f/k/a Designs CMAL Retail Store Inc.)	Delaware
Casual Male Direct, LLC (f/k/a Designs CMAL TBD Inc.)	Delaware
CMRG Apparel Management, Inc.	Delaware
CMRG Holdco, LLC	Delaware
CMXL Apparel, LP (a)	Delaware
CMRG Apparel, LLC (f/k/a Designs Apparel, Inc.) (b)	Delaware
Casual Male Store, LLC (f/k/a Designs CMAL Store Inc.)	Delaware
Capture, LLC (c)	Virginia
Casual Male RBT, LLC	Delaware
Casual Male RBT (U.K.) LLC (d)	Delaware
DXL Canada, Inc. (f/k/a Casual Male Canada Inc.)	Ontario, Canada
Casual Male (EUROPE) LLC	Delaware
Think Big Products LLC	Delaware
Canton PL Liquidating Corp. (f/k/a LP Innovations, Inc.)	Nevada
CMRG Hong Kong Limited	Hong Kong

- (a) A limited partnership in which CMRG Apparel Management, Inc. is a General Partner owning 1% and CMRG Holdco, LLC is a Limited Partner owning 99%. (Both partners are wholly-owned subsidiaries of Destination XL Group, Inc.)
- (b) 100% owned by CMXL Apparel, LP (a wholly-owned subsidiary of Destination XL Group, Inc.)
- (c) 100% owned by Casual Male Store, LLC (a wholly-owned subsidiary of Destination XL Group, Inc.)
- (d) 100% owned by Casual Male RBT, LLC (a wholly-owned subsidiary of Destination XL Group, Inc.)

**Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

The Board of Directors  
Destination XL Group, Inc.:

We consent to the incorporation by reference in the registration statements (Nos. 333-118966 and 333-90742) on Form S-3 and (Nos. 333-136890, 333-163245, 333-164618, 333-170708, 333-170764, 333-194627 and 333-213311) on Form S-8 of Destination XL Group, Inc. of our reports dated March 23, 2018, with respect to the consolidated balance sheets of Destination XL Group, Inc. and subsidiaries as of February 3, 2018 and January 28, 2017, and the related consolidated statements of operations, comprehensive income (loss), changes in stockholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 3, 2018, and the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting as of February 3, 2018, which reports appear in the February 3, 2018 annual report on Form 10-K of Destination XL Group, Inc.

/s/ KPMG LLP

Boston, Massachusetts  
March 23, 2018

## PRINCIPAL EXECUTIVE OFFICER CERTIFICATION

I, David A. Levin, certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Destination XL Group, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 23, 2018

/s/ David A. Levin

---

**David A. Levin**  
**President and Chief Executive Officer**

## PRINCIPAL FINANCIAL OFFICER CERTIFICATION

I, Peter H. Stratton, Jr., certify that:

1. I have reviewed this Annual Report on Form 10-K of Destination XL Group, Inc.;
2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
  - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
  - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
  - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation; and
  - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
  - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
  - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: March 23, 2018

/s/ Peter H. Stratton, Jr.

---

**Peter H. Stratton, Jr.**  
**Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer**

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report on Form 10-K of Destination XL Group, Inc. (the "Company") for the period ended February 3, 2018 as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the "Report"), I, David A. Levin, Chief Executive Officer of the Company, certify pursuant to 18 U.S.C. § 1350, as adopted pursuant to § 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"); and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

This certification is being furnished as an exhibit to the Report pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, and shall not be deemed "filed" for purposes of Section 18 of the Exchange Act, or otherwise subject to the liability of that section. This certification will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Exchange Act, regardless of any general incorporation language in such filing, except to the extent that the Company specifically incorporates this certification by reference.

Dated: March 23, 2018

/s/ David A. Levin

---

**David A. Levin**  
**Chief Executive Officer**

*A signed original of this written statement required by Section 906, or other document authenticating, acknowledging, or otherwise adopting the signature that appears in typed form within the electronic version of this written statement required by Section 906, has been provided to the Company and will be retained by the Company and furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission or its staff upon request.*

**CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO 18 U.S.C. SECTION 1350, AS ADOPTED PURSUANT TO SECTION 906 OF THE SARBANES-OXLEY ACT OF 2002**

In connection with the Annual Report on Form 10-K of Destination XL Group, Inc. (the “Company”) for the period ended February 3, 2018, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on the date hereof (the “Report”), I, Peter H. Stratton, Jr., Chief Financial Officer of the Company, certify pursuant to 18 U.S.C. § 1350, as adopted pursuant to § 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, that:

- (1) The Report fully complies with the requirements of section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the “Exchange Act”); and
- (2) The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

This certification is being furnished as an exhibit to the Report pursuant to 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, and shall not be deemed “filed” for purposes of Section 18 of the Exchange Act, or otherwise subject to the liability of that section. This certification will not be deemed to be incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, or the Exchange Act, regardless of any general incorporation language in such filing, except to the extent that the Company specifically incorporates this certification by reference.

Dated: March 23, 2018

/s/ Peter H. Stratton, Jr.

---

**Peter H. Stratton, Jr.**  
**Executive Vice President and Chief Financial Officer**

*A signed original of this written statement required by Section 906, or other document authenticating, acknowledging, or otherwise adopting the signature that appears in typed form within the electronic version of this written statement required by Section 906, has been provided to the Company and will be retained by the Company and furnished to the Securities and Exchange Commission or its staff upon request.*